

CONTENTS

# **Norwegian Course**

## **Handbook**

Instructions

Vocabularies

Explanatory notes

The Linguaphone Institute

© 1964 Linguaphone Institute Limited, London

All rights reserved. No part of this publication, or related recorded material, may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior permission of Linguaphone Institute Limited.

First published 1964  
3rd revised edition 1986

LSN ONOENH10

Printed and bound in Great Britain by  
Biddles Ltd, Guildford and King's Lynn

## CONTENTS

	Page
Instructions . . . . .	1
Vocabularies and text of sounds section . . . . .	15
Explanatory notes . . . . .	73
Appendix: Outline of Norwegian Grammar . . . . .	189
Alphabetical vocabulary:	
Norwegian/English . . . . .	223
English/Norwegian . . . . .	246



will be found under **be** in the Norwegian-English section and the corresponding "to ask for" under "ask" in the English-Norwegian section.

When using the English-Norwegian section of the Vocabulary for the purpose of composition, what has been said above regarding the varying meaning of words in different contexts should be borne in mind. When selecting a Norwegian word in the English-Norwegian section as a translation of a given English word, it is advisable to look it up in the Norwegian-English section to see whether it is rendered there by an English word corresponding to the meaning it is desired to convey. If there is then still any doubt, recourse should be had to a good dictionary.

The greatest care has been exercised in the compilation of these vocabularies, but in the event of errors being detected in it we shall be grateful if these are pointed out to us; any suggestions for its improvement will be welcomed and given careful consideration for future editions.

#### LINGUAPHONE INSTITUTE.

#### ABBREVIATIONS

accus.	accusative (case)
adj.	adjective
adjl.	adjectival
adv.	adverb
approx.	approximately
c.	common (gender)
conj.	conjunction
dep.	deponent
e.g.	for example
gen.	genitive (case)
i.e.	that is to say
imp.	imperative
lit.	literally
n.	neuter (gender)
pass.	passive
pl.	plural
p.p.	past participle
pron.	pronoun
rel.	relative
s.	singular
sthg.	something
subj.	subjunctive

#### Innledning

#### NÅ SKAL VI SNAKKE NORSK

#### FØRSTE (I) DEL

innledning (c.), introduction  
 nå, now  
 skal, shall  
 vi, we  
 snakke, (to) speak  
 norsk, Norwegian  
 nå skal vi snakke norsk, now let's speak Norwegian; now we are going to speak Norwegian  
 første, first  
 del (c.), part  
 god, good  
 morgen (c.), morning  
 vær, be  
 (å være, to be)  
 så, so  
 snill, kind  
 å, to  
 høre, (to) hear  
 etter, after  
 høre etter, (to) listen  
 vær så snill å høre etter, be so kind as to listen; please listen  
 jeg, I  
 er, am, is, are  
 (å være, to be)  
 lærer(en) (c.), (the) teacher  
 De, you  
 elev(en) (c.), (the) pupil; (the) student  
 norsk, Norwegian  
 ikke, not  
 jeg snakker, I speak; I am speaking  
 i, in  
 Norge (n.), Norway  
 man, one  
 man snakker, one speaks  
 man snakker norsk, one speaks Norwegian; Norwegian is spoken; they speak Norwegian

dette, this  
 et (n.), a; one  
 bord (n.), table  
 en (c.), a; one

#### ANNEN (II) DEL

annen, second  
 dag (c.), day  
 god dag, good day; good morning; good afternoon; good evening

bok (c.), book  
 bok(en), (the) book  
 ligger, is lying; lies  
 (å ligge, to lie)  
 på, on  
 bord(et) (n.), (the) table  
 står, stands; is standing  
 (å stå, to stand)  
 i, in  
 dagligstue(n) (c.), (the) sitting-room; (the) living-room  
 det (n.), that; it  
 stol (c.), chair  
 De sitter, you are sitting; you sit  
 (å sitte, to sit)  
 ved, at; by  
 har, have; has  
 (å ha, to have)  
 hånd(en) (c.), (the) hand  
 i hånden, in your hand  
 ser, see; sees  
 (å se, to see)  
 De ser i boken, you are looking at the book  
 De lytter, you are listening; you listen  
 (å lytte, to listen)  
 til, to; till  
 min, my  
 stemme (c.), voice  
 De lærer, you are learning; you learn  
 (å lære, to learn)  
 forstå, (to) understand  
 lese, (to) read  
 og, and  
 skrive, (to) write

jeg taler, I speak; I am speaking  
 (å tale, to speak; talk)  
 langsomt, slowly  
 når, when  
 De forstår, you understand  
 fort, quickly  
 De forstår ikke, you do not understand

## Innledning II—Leksjon 1)

svare, (to) answer, reply  
mine (pl.), my  
spørsmål (n.), question(s)  
hvem, who  
eller, or  
også, also; as well; too  
nei, no  
snakker De norsk?, do you speak Norwegian?  
ja, yes  
lite grann, a little  
hva, what  
hvor, where  
den (c.), it

## Leksjon 1

### MIN FAMILIE

en, one  
første, first  
leksjon (c.), lesson  
min, my  
familie (c.), family  
her, here  
kone (c.), wife  
sønn (c.), son  
datter (c.), daughter  
jeg heter, my name is; I am called  
(å hete, to be called)  
min kone heter, my wife's name is  
fru, Mrs.  
(frue (c.), wife)  
hun, she  
kvinne (c.), woman  
mann (c.), man; husband  
fru Linds mann, Mrs. Lind's husband  
vi, we  
to, two  
barn (n.pl.), children  
(barn, child)  
gutt(en) (c.), (the) boy  
han, he  
tolv, twelve  
år (n.), year(s)  
gammel, old  
pike(n) (c.), (the) girl  
åtte, eight

bror (c.), brother  
søster (c.), sister  
de, they

hva gjør De?, what are you doing?  
(å gjøre, to do)  
hva lytter De til?, what are you listening to?  
Deres, your  
hva lærer De nå?, what are you learning now?  
meg, me  
Dem (acc.), you  
meget, very; much  
godt (adv.), well; good  
da forstår jeg Dem ikke, then I do not understand you

søsken (pl.), brothers and sisters  
hans, his  
far (c.), father  
mor (c.), mother  
hennes, her  
våre (pl.), our  
deres, their  
foreldre, parents

min kone sitter, my wife is sitting  
(å sitte, to sit)  
lenestol (c.), easy-chair; armchair  
leser, is reading; reads  
(å lese, to read)  
min kone leser i en bok, my wife is reading a book  
jeg røker, I am smoking; I smoke  
(å røke, to smoke)  
sigarett (c.), cigarette  
vindu(et) (n.), (the) window  
klapper, is stroking; strokes  
(å klappe, to stroke)  
hund(en) (c.), (the) dog  
kne (n.), knee  
ligger på kne, is kneeling; is on his knees  
leker, is playing; plays  
(å leke, to play)  
med, with  
tog (n.), train  
vår (c.), our  
katt (c.), cat  
værelse(t) (n.), the room

## Leksjon 2 SPØRSMÅL OG SVAR

to, two  
annen, second  
svar (n.), answer; reply  
hva heter jeg?, what is my name?; what am I called?  
De heter Lind, your name is Lind; you are called Lind  
mange, many

hvor mange, how many  
det er hun, she is (*lit.* that is she)  
gulv(et) (n.), (the) floor  
noen, any, some  
brødre (pl.), brothers  
ingen, not any; none; no  
som, who; that  
hvem er det som røker?, who is smoking?  
røker De?, do you smoke?

## Leksjon 3 VART HJEM

tre, three  
tredje, third  
vårt (n.), our  
hjem (n.), home  
de fleste, (the) most  
familier (c. pl.), families  
(familie, family)  
bor, live; are living  
(å bo, to live)  
leilighet(er) (c.), flat(s)  
men, but; however  
eget, own  
mange har eget hus, many (people) have their own house  
forstedene (c. pl.), suburbs  
(forstad, suburb)  
villa (c.), villa; detached house  
i utkanten, on the outskirts  
av, of; off  
by(en) (c.), (the) town; city  
som, like; as; which; that  
andre, other  
villa(er), villa(s); (detached) house(s)  
etasje(r) (c.), floor(s)  
foruten, besides; as well as  
kjeller (c.), cellar  
loft (n.), loft

kjeller(en) (the) cellar  
fyrrom (met) (n.), (the) boiler-room  
rom (n.), room  
for, for  
oppbevaring (c.), storing  
mat (c.), food  
frukt (c.), fruit  
i første etasje, on the ground floor  
vi finner, we find  
(å finne, to find)  
spisestue (c.), dining-room  
kjøkken (n.), kitchen  
liten (c.), small, little

entré (c.), hall  
denne (c.), this  
entre(en), (the) hall  
i denne entreen, in this hall  
knagg(er) (c.), peg(s)  
yttertøy (n.), outer wear  
hylle (c.), shelf  
til, for  
hatt(er) (c.), hat(s)  
stativ (n.), stand  
paraply(er) (c.), umbrella(s)  
fra, from  
fører, lead; leads  
(å føre, to lead)  
trapp (c.), staircase  
opp, up; upstairs  
annen etasje, first floor  
hvor, where  
soveværelse(r) (n.), bedroom(s). (*lit.* sleeproom(s))  
bad (n.), bathroom  
toalett (n.), toilet  
smal, narrow  
stort (n.), big; large  
luftig, airy  
der, there  
vi oppbevarer, we store; keep  
(å oppbevare, to store; keep)  
forskjellige, various; different  
ting (c.), thing(s)  
bruker, use  
(å bruke, to use)  
for, for; at  
øyeblikk(et) (n.), (the) moment  
for øyeblikket, at the moment; just now

rundt, round; around  
hage (c.), garden  
frukttrær (n.), fruit-trees  
(frukttre, fruit-tree)  
bærbusk(er) (c.), fruit-bush(es)  
høy, tall; high  
flaggstang (c.), flagpole

(3-5)

nordmenn (c.), Norwegians  
glad, fond; glad; happy  
er glad i, are fond of  
(å være glad i, to be fond of)  
blomst(er) (c.), flower(s)  
slags, sort(s); kind(s)  
mange forskjellige slags blomster, many  
different kinds of flowers  
rose(r) (c.), rose(s)  
tulipan(er) (c.), tulip(s)

#### Leksjon 4 SAMTALE

fire, four  
fjerde, fourth  
samtale (c.), conversation  
skal, shall  
om, about  
kan, can  
(å kunne, to be able to)  
si, (to) say; tell  
litt, a little  
utenfor, outside  
litt utenfor byen, not far from the town  
riktig, right; correct  
helt riktig, quite right; quite correct  
verken, neither  
verken . . . eller, neither . . . nor  
la, (to) let

osv. (= og så videre), etc. (= and so on)  
kjøkkenhage (c.), kitchen garden  
vi dyrker, we grow; cultivate  
(å dyrke, to grow; cultivate)  
potet(er) (c.), potato(es)  
spinat (c.), spinach  
blomkål (c.), cauliflower  
gulrøtter (c.), carrots  
(gulrot, carrot)  
løk (c.), onion(s)

ett, one  
fem, five  
seks, six  
regner med, count; include  
(å regne med, to count; include)  
soveværelse(t), (the) bedroom\*  
hvilke, which; what  
stue (c.), living-room; sitting-room  
vokser, grow  
(å vokse, to grow)  
bare, only  
et par, a couple; a few  
liker De frukt?, do you like fruit?  
(å like, to like)  
særlig, particularly; especially  
eple(r) (n.), apple(s)  
pære(r) (c.), pear(s)

\* The speaker should have said *soveværelsene* (definite form plural), "the bedrooms".

#### Leksjon 5 VAR DAGLIGSTUE

fem, five  
femte, fifth  
kommer, come  
(å komme, to come)  
kommer inn i, come into; enter  
inn, in  
lengst, furthest; farthest  
borte, away  
krok(en) (c.), (the) corner; nook  
lengst borte i kroken, in the far corner  
høyre, right  
til høyre, to the right  
piano (n.), piano  
pianostol (c.), piano-stool  
foran, in front

venstre, left  
vindu (n.), window  
midt imot, opposite  
sofa (c.), sofa; settee  
pute(r) (c.), cushion(s)  
rundt (n.), round  
askebeger (n.), ashtray  
dessuten, besides; in addition  
avis(er) (c.), newspaper(s)  
vegg(en) (c.), (the) wall  
side(n) (c.), (the) side  
ved siden av, next to; by the side of  
bokhylle, bookcase

(5-7)

bøker (c. pl.), books  
(bok, book)  
mellom, between  
leselampe (c.), reading-lamp  
deilig, beautiful; nice  
tykt (n.), thick  
teppe (n.), carpet  
dekker, covers; cover  
(å dekke, to cover)

sentraloppvarming (c.), central heating  
radiator(en) (c.), (the) radiator  
under, under; underneath  
blomsterbord (n.), table for flowers;  
plant stand  
blomst(er) (c.), flower(s); plant(s)  
blomsterpote(r) (c.), flower-pot(s)  
om, in; during

#### Leksjon 6 SAMTALE MELLOM LÆRER OG ELEV

seks, six  
sjette, sixth  
helt, quite  
full, full  
vet, know  
(å vite, to know)  
talt, counted  
(å telle, to count)  
dør(en) (c.), (the) door  
noenting, anything  
ingenting, nothing

kveld(en) (c.), (the) evening  
blir, gets; get; becomes; become  
(å bli, to get; become)  
mørkt, (n.), dark  
tenner, light; switch on  
(å tenne, to light; switch on)  
lys(et) (n.), (the) light  
vi tenner lyset, we switch the light on  
trekker, draw; pull  
(å trekke, to draw; pull)  
gardin(ene) (c. and n.pl.), (the) curtain(s)  
om dagen, during the day  
faller, falls; comes  
(å falle, to fall)  
gjennom, through

ellers, otherwise  
værelse(t) (n.), (the) room  
sitter noen der?, is anybody sitting there?  
gleder, pleases  
(å glede, to please)  
det gleder meg, I am pleased (*lit.* it pleases me)  
alle, everybody; everyone

#### Leksjon 7 SAMMENLIGNINGER

sju, seven  
sjuende, seventh  
sammenligning(er) (c.), comparison(s)  
oss, us  
sammenligne, (to) compare  
nabo(er) (c.), neighbour(s)  
gode (pl.), good  
venn(er) (c.), friend(s)  
pen, nice; pretty; good-looking  
deres, theirs  
mindre, smaller  
enn, than  
derfor, therefore  
mobler (n.pl.), furniture  
(møbel, piece of furniture)

arbeidsværelse(t) (n.), (the) study;  
work-room

musikalske (pl.), musical  
begge, both  
spiller, play  
(å spille, to play)  
flygel (n.), grand piano  
vanlig, ordinary  
note(n) (c.), (the) music  
sine, her, hers  
noteshylle(n) (c.), (the) music shelf  
noteskap (n.), music cabinet  
så godt som, as well as  
bedre, better  
enn, than

hun er vel, she is probably  
 beste, best  
 pianistinne(n) (c.), (the) pianist (f.)  
 distrikt(et) (n.), (the) district  
 selv, personally; myself  
 fiolin (c.), violin

peis (c.), open hearth  
 hos, with; at; by  
 dem, them

## Leksjon 8 ENDA EN SAMTALE

åtte, eight  
 åttende, eighth  
 enda, still; yet  
 allerede, already  
 mye, a lot; much  
 gjerne, willingly; gladly  
 nå vil jeg gjerne, now I would like to  
 (å ville, to want to)  
 spørre, (to) ask  
 kan, can  
 hvilket (n.), which  
 vanskelig, difficult  
 tror, think  
 (å tro, to think)  
 Deres, yours  
 var, was  
 (å være, to be)  
 elskverdig, amiably  
 sagt, said  
 (å si, to say)  
 mer, more  
 moderne, modern; contemporary  
 seg, one-, him-, her-, itself, themselves  
 giftet seg, married  
 (å gifte seg, to marry)

## Leksjon 9 ET BESØK

ni, nine  
 niende, ninth  
 besøk (n.), visit  
 søndag, Sunday  
 ringer, rings  
 (å ringe, to ring)  
 det ringer på døren, the doorbell rings  
 (lit. it rings on the door)  
 bekjent (c.), acquaintance  
 nettopp, just  
 er nettopp kommet, has just arrived  
 åpner, open

notehefte(r) (n. pl.), (sheet-)music  
 lampe (c.), lamp  
 henger, hangs  
 (å henge, to hang)  
 vakkert (n.), pretty; beautiful  
 maleri (n.), painting  
 malt, painted  
 (å male, to paint)  
 berømt, famous  
 maler (c.), painter

jo, yes (used after a question in the  
 negative) (here expletive only)  
 senere, later  
 kjøpte, bought  
 (å kjøpe, to buy)  
 synes, (to) think  
 hva synes De?, what do you think?;  
 what is your opinion?  
 ikke sant?, don't you think?; don't you  
 agree?  
 sikkert, certain; true  
 være, (to) be  
 jeg kan ikke la være, I cannot help (lit.  
 I can not let be)  
 beundre, (to) admire  
 hver, every  
 gang (c.), time  
 virkelig, really  
 utmerket, excellent  
 instrument (n.), instrument  
 dessverre, unfortunately; I am sorry to  
 say  
 fløyte (c.), flute  
 hun synger, she sings  
 (å syng, to sing)  
 ganske, quite

(å åpne, to open)  
 håndhilser, shake hands  
 (å håndhils, to shake hands)  
 gjest(en) (c.), (the) guest  
 ber, ask  
 (å be, to ask; invite)  
 ham, him  
 ned, down

kort, short; shortly  
 igjen, again  
 niese (c.), niece  
 tilbake, back

land(er) (n.), (the) country  
 bo hos, stay with; live with  
 (å bo, to stay; live)  
 dag(er) (c.), day(s)  
 hun hilser på, she greets  
 (å hilse, to greet)  
 tante (c.), aunt  
 presenterer, introduces  
 (å presentere, to introduce)  
 henne, her  
 sammen, together  
 alle sammen, all; everybody; everyone  
 vi setter oss alle sammen, we all sit down  
 (å sette seg, to sit down)

damene (c. pl.), the ladies  
 (dame, lady)  
 menn (c. pl.), men  
 (mann, man)  
 diskuterer, discuss  
 (å diskutere, to discuss)

## Leksjon 10 ETTERMIDDAGSKAFFE

ti, ten  
 tiende, tenth  
 ettermiddagskaffe (c.), afternoon coffee  
 hjertelig, hearty; cordial  
 velkommen, welcome  
 hjertelig velkommen!, I am very pleased  
 to see you! (lit. heartily welcome)  
 hvordan står det til?, how are you? (lit.  
 how stands it to)  
 unnskyld, excuse  
 (å unnskyld, to excuse)  
 ute, out  
 hyggelig, nice  
 det var hyggelig, it is nice; I am pleased  
 du, you  
 du ser virkelig godt ut, you really look  
 well; you do look well  
 (å se ut, to look)  
 dere, you

## Leksjon 11 SPISESTUEN

elleve, eleven  
 ellevte, eleventh

politikk, politics  
 forretning(er) (c. pl.), business  
 siste, latest; last  
 nyhet(er) (c. pl.), news  
 stund (c.), time; while  
 brett (n.), tray  
 kaffe (c.), coffee  
 kanne (c.), pot  
 kopp(er) (c.), cup(s)  
 asjett(er) (c.), small plate(s)  
 sukker (n.), sugar  
 fløte (c.), cream  
 fat (n.), plate; dish  
 småkake(r) (c.), cake(s)  
 skjenker, pours  
 (å skjenke, to pour)  
 byr, offers  
 (å by, to offer)  
 får, get  
 (å få, to get; have)  
 får vi inn, here: are brought in  
 forfriskning(er) (c.), refreshment(s)

kjenner, know  
 (å kjenne, to know)  
 hinannen, one another; each other  
 herr, Mr  
 frøken, Miss  
 sitt, sit  
 (å sitte, to sit)  
 drikke, (to) drink  
 skal det være, would you like; do you  
 want  
 bruker, use (here take)  
 (å bruke, to use)  
 nytt (n.), new  
 leit, sad  
 da, expletive  
 det var da leit, that is sad; I am sorry  
 to hear that  
 håper, hope  
 (å håpe, to hope)  
 snart (n.), soon  
 brorsønn (c.), brother's son; nephew  
 onkel (c.), uncle

måltid(er) (n.), meal(s)  
 frokost (c.), breakfast  
 utpå dagen, later in the day  
 middag (c.), dinner  
 aften(en) (c.), (the) evening  
 aftensmat, supper  
 bilde(t) (n.), (the) picture  
 direktør, director  
 utlandet, abroad  
 bedt, invited; asked  
 (å be, to invite; ask)  
 vertinne(n) (c.), (the) hostess  
 øverste, top; topmost; uppermost  
 ende(n) (c.), (the) end  
 side (c.), side  
 vert(en) (c.), (the) host  
 ham, him

spisebord(et) (n.), (the) dining-table  
 hvit, white  
 duk (c.), table-cloth  
 hushjelp(en) (c.), (the) maid  
 dekket, laid  
 (å dekke, to lay (a table))  
 kniv (c.), knife  
 gaffel (c.), fork  
 skje (c.), spoon  
 glass (n.), glass  
 hver, each  
 kuvert (c.), place  
 serviett (c.), napkin

## Leksjon 12 TIL BORDS

tolv, twelve  
 tolvte, twelfth  
 til bords, at the table; sitting down for  
 a meal  
 akkurat, just  
 ferdig, ready; finished  
 med det samme, right away; at once  
 ha, to have  
 øl (n.), beer  
 rødvin (c.), red wine  
 ingen, neither; none; no  
 ingen av delene, neither  
 avholdsmann (c.), teetotaller  
 hvor lenge, how long  
 vært, been  
 (å være, to be)  
 slett ikke, not at all; certainly not  
 flere, many; several  
 gang(er) (c.), time(s)  
 før, before; previously

tallerken (c.), plate  
 rundstykke (n.), roll  
 saltkar (n.), salt cellar  
 pepperbøsse (c.), pepper pot  
 sennepskrukke (c.), mustard pot  
 eddik (c.), vinegar  
 olje (c.), oil

buffet(en) (c.), (the) sideboard  
 regel (c.), rule  
 som regel, as a rule  
 drue(r) (c.), grape(s)  
 banan(er) (c.), banana(s)  
 appelsin(er) (c.), orange(s)  
 alt etter, according to  
 årstid(en) (c.), (the) time of year; sea-  
 son  
 servert, served  
 (å servere, to serve)  
 suppe (c.), soup  
 fisk (c.), fish  
 kjøttrett (c.), meat dish  
 frisk, fresh; healthy  
 salat (c.), salad  
 tomat(er) (c.), tomato(es)  
 grønnsak(er) (c.), vegetable(s)  
 kanskje, may be; perhaps  
 ost (c.), cheese  
 kjeks (c.), biscuit(s)  
 slutt (c.), finish; end  
 dessert(en) (c.), (the) dessert; sweet

må, (to) have to; must  
 nemlig, for; because  
 jeg må nemlig gjøre, I have to make  
 (å gjøre, to make; do)  
 forretningsreise (c.), business trip  
 hit, here  
 minst, at least  
 en gang om året, once a year  
 kjenner, feel; know  
 (å kjenne, to feel; know)  
 liksom, in a way  
 hjemme, at home  
 jeg kjenner meg liksom hjemme her, in  
 a way I feel at home here  
 spurte, asked  
 (å spørre, to ask)  
 avveksling (c.), variety  
 by, (to) offer  
 kylling (c.), chicken  
 ja takk, gjerne, thank you, with pleasure  
 svært, very

## MITT SOVEVÆRELSE

tretten, thirteen  
 trettende, thirteenth  
 mitt (n.), my  
 sent, late  
 trett, tired  
 søvrig, sleepy  
 går jeg, I go  
 (å gå, to go)  
 slår på lyset, switch the light on  
 (å slå på, to switch on; turn on)  
 tar av, take off  
 (å ta, to take)  
 sko(ene) (c.), (the) shoe(s)  
 kler av meg, undress  
 (å kle av seg, to undress)  
 tar på, put on  
 pyjamas (c.), pyjamas  
 jeg legger meg, I lie down; I go to bed  
 (å legge seg, to lie down; go to bed)  
 slukker lyset, turn the light out; switch  
 the light off  
 (å slukke, to turn off (out); switch off)  
 minutt(er) (n.), minute(s)  
 sovner, go to sleep  
 (å sovne, to go to sleep)

presis, precisely  
 halv åtte, half past seven  
 vekkerur(et) (n.), (the) alarm-clock  
 vekker, wakes  
 (å vekke, to wake)  
 jeg står opp, I get up  
 (å stå opp, to get up)  
 tøfler (c. pl.), slippers  
 (tøffel, slipper)  
 slåbrok (c.), dressing-gown  
 bad(et) (n.), (the) bathroom  
 tapper, run  
 (å tappe, to run)  
 varmt, hot  
 kaldt, cold  
 vann (n.), water  
 badekar(et) (n.), (the) bath  
 mens, while  
 renner, runs; is running  
 (å renne, to run)

vasker, wash  
 (å vaske, to wash)  
 ansikt(et) (n.), (the) face  
 hendene (c. pl.), (the) hands  
 (hånd, hand)  
 pusser, brush; polish  
 (å pusse, to brush; polish)  
 tennene (c. pl.), (the) teeth  
 (tann, tooth)  
 barberer meg, shave  
 (å barbere seg, to shave)  
 stenger, turn off; close  
 (å stenge, to turn off; close)  
 kran(ene) (c.), (the) tap(s)  
 bad (n.), bath  
 tar meg et bad, have a bath  
 ofte, often  
 dusj (c.), shower bath  
 tørker, dry; wipe  
 (å tørke, to dry; wipe)  
 håndkle (n.), towel  
 kler på meg, dress  
 (å kle på seg, to dress)

toalettbord(et) (n.), (the) dressing  
 table  
 speil(et) (n.), (the) mirror  
 hårbørste (c.), hairbrush  
 kam (c.), comb  
 håndspeil (n.), hand mirror  
 parfymeflaske (c.), bottle of perfume  
 pudderdåse (c.), powder compact  
 alt, all; everything  
 selvsagt, of course; obviously  
 tøy, clothes  
 skjorte(r) (c.), shirt(s)  
 snipp(er) (c.), collar(s)  
 lommestørklær (n. pl.), handkerchiefs  
 (lommestørkle, handkerchief)  
 undertøy (n.), underwear  
 sånt som, things like; such as  
 strømpe(r) (c.), stocking(s); sock(s)  
 skjerf (n.), scarf (scarves)  
 klesskap(et) (n.), (the) wardrobe



## Leksjon 14 MORGEN OG AFTEN

fjorten, fourteen  
fjortende, fourteenth  
når pleier du å stå opp?, when do you usually get up?; when are you in the habit of getting up?  
(å pleie, to be in the habit of; to be used to)  
ved halvåttetiden, about half past seven  
hvorfor, why  
tidlig, early  
reise, (to) travel  
kontor(et) (n.), (the) office  
i alminnelighet, generally; usually  
blir du i byen?, do you stay in town?  
hele, all  
alltid, always  
hva gjør dere?, what do you do?  
(å gjøre, to do)  
for det meste, mostly  
av og til, now and then  
kino (c.), cinema  
teater (n.), theatre

## Leksjon 15 HOTELLET

femten, fifteen  
femtende, fifteenth  
hotell(et) (n.), (the) hotel  
det finnes, there are; one can find  
større, larger  
de fleste større byer, most of the larger towns  
som oftest, often; as a rule; generally  
ligner, resemble  
(å ligne, to resemble)  
hverandre, each other  
ganske meget, quite a lot  
først, first  
vestibyle(n) (c.), (the) entrance hall  
mengde (c.), a lot; numerous  
reisende, travellers  
enten . . . eller, either . . . or  
hotelltjener (c.), hotel porter  
tar seg av, takes care of  
(å ta seg av, to take care of; look after)  
bagasje (c.), luggage  
resepsjon(en) (c.), (the) reception  
De får oppgitt, you are given  
nummer(et) (n.), (the) number  
ber om, ask for  
nøkkel (c.), key  
heis(en) (c.), (the) lift

ikke er kjent, does not know

i går aftes, last night  
interessant, interesting  
film (c.), film  
hadde du tenkt?, were you thinking of?  
did you intend to?  
(å tenke, to think; to intend to)  
spesielt, special; in particular  
kunne, could  
ut, out  
morsomt, amusing; fun  
i dag, today  
bryllupsdag (c.), wedding day; here: wedding anniversary  
må jeg få lov å gratulere?, may I congratulate you?; (*lit.* may I be allowed to congratulate you?)  
gratulere, (to) congratulate  
hvis, if  
hvis det passer, if that is convenient  
(å passe, to be convenient; fit)  
omkring, about  
takk skal du ha, thank you very much

personal(et) (n.), (the) staff  
villig, willing  
opplysning(er) (c.), information  
de viktigste, the most important  
severdighet(er) (c.), sights  
skaffer, obtain  
(å skaffe, to obtain)  
konsert (c.), concert  
teaterbillett(er) (c.), theatre ticket(s)  
opphold(et) (n.), (the) stay  
behagelig, pleasant; comfortable

treng, (to) need  
guide (c.), guide  
tolk (c.), interpreter  
forretningskonferanse(r) (c.), business conference(s)  
sikkert, surely; certainly  
få tak i, (to) get hold of  
forretningsbrev (n. pl.), business letters  
lignende, such like; similar  
skrivemaskin (c.), typewriter  
til disposisjon, at your disposal  
opptatt, engaged; busy  
fordrive, (to) pass  
tid(en) (c.), (the) time  
å se seg om, to have a look around  
butikk(ene) (c.), (the) shop(s)

## Leksjon 16 VI BESTILLER HOTELLROM

seksten, sixteen  
sekstende, sixteenth  
bestiller, order; book  
(å bestille, to order; book)  
hotellrom (n.), hotel room  
nå er vi fremme, here we are; now we are at our destination  
vil du bli her, will you stay here  
(å bli, to stay)  
passe, (to) look after  
vent med å, delay  
(å vente, to wait)  
betale, (to) pay  
sjåfø(r)er(en) (c.), (the) taxi driver; chauffeur  
vet, know  
(å vite, to know)  
om, if  
ledige, vacant  
ja vel, right; O.K.  
kan jeg få?, may I have?  
enkeltrom (n.), single room(s)  
dobbeltværelse (n.), double room  
nesten, nearly  
fullt belagt, full up; fully booked

jeg skal se etter, I will have a look  
herrene (c. pl.), the gentlemen  
(herre, gentleman)  
tenkt, thought  
(å tenke, to think)  
i annen etasje, on the first floor  
pris(er) (c.), price(s)  
inkludert, included  
(å inkludere, to include)  
fylle ut, (to) fill in  
disse, these  
blankett(ene) (c.), (the) form(s)  
etternavn (n.), surname  
fornavn (n.), Christian name  
fødselsår (n.), year of birth  
fødselsdag, day of birth; birthday  
nasjonalitet (c.), nationality  
tittel (c.), title  
yrke (n.), profession; occupation  
hjemsted (n.), home town  
adresse (c.), address  
underskrift (c.), signature  
i orden, in order  
nøklen(e) (c.), the keys  
(nøkkel, key)

hotellbestyrer (c.), hotel manager

## Leksjon 17 PÅ RESTAURANT

sytt, seventeen  
syttende, seventeenth  
restaurant (c.), restaurant  
kafé(er) (c.), café(s)  
spisested(er) (n.), eating place(s)  
egne, (their) own  
spisesal(er) (c.), dining room(s)  
ser ut, looks  
(å se ut, to look)  
omtrent som, much as; roughly like  
kelner(ne) (c.), (the) waiter(s)  
anretningsbord(et) (n.), (the) serving table  
rekke (c.), number; series  
rett(er) (c.), dish(es)  
en annen, another  
bærer, carries  
(å bære, to carry)  
flaske (c.), bottle  
hvitvin (c.), white wine  
vinglass (n.), wine glass(es)  
stiller, places; puts  
(å stille, to place; put)

kjøler(en) (c.), (the) cooler  
holde, (to) keep  
vin(en) (c.), (the) wine  
samme, same  
den samme som, the same as  
lunsj (c.), lunch  
ved ett-tiden, about one o'clock  
ved fem-sekstiden, about five or six o'clock  
ved tre-firetiden, about three or four o'clock  
brød (n.), bread  
smør (n.), butter  
pålegg (n.), things laid on bread  
bløtkokt, soft boiled  
egg (n.), egg  
melk (c.), milk  
alminnelig, usual  
spesialitet (c.), speciality  
smørbrød (n.), open sandwiches  
brødskeiv(er) (c.), slice(s) of bread  
kjøtt (n.), meat  
hummer (c.), lobster  
reke(r) (c.), prawn(s)

## Leksjon 18

### VI BESTILLER MIDDAG

atten, eighteen  
 attende, eighteenth  
 reservert, reserved  
 (å reservere, to reserve)  
 vindusbordet, the table by the window  
 der borte, over there  
 får vi se?, may we see?  
 spisekart(et) (n.), (the) menu  
 vinkart(et) (n.), (the) wine list  
 hva skal det være?, what would you like? (*lit.* what shall it be?)  
 sulten, hungry  
 det var synd, that is a pity; what a pity  
 mens, while  
 mens du tenker deg om, while you think about it

få, (to) have; get  
 vi skulle kunne få, we should be able to get  
 avkokt, steamed (boiled)  
 laks (c.), salmon  
 spekeskinke (c.), gammon (*salted, smoked, hung and eaten uncooked*)  
 eggerøre (c.), scrambled egg  
 iallfall, anyway; in any case  
 ekte, genuine  
 etterpå, afterwards  
 likør (c.), liqueur  
 regning(en) (c.), (the) bill  
 med det samme, at the same time  
 beholde, (to) keep  
 rest(en) (c.), (the) rest

## Leksjon 19

### KLOKKESLETT OG DATO

nitten, nineteen  
 nittende, nineteenth  
 klokkeslett (n.), hour; time  
 dato (c.), date  
 utenlands, abroad  
 nøyaktig, exactly; accurately  
 på forhånd, in advance; beforehand  
 dagligtale, everyday language  
 klokke (c.), watch; clock  
 hva er klokken?, what time is it?  
 hvor mange er klokken?, what is the time?  
 klokken er ett, it is one o'clock  
 den er ett, it is one

halvtimene, the half hours  
 uttrykkes, are expressed  
 (å uttrykke, to express)  
 slik, thus  
 kvarterene, the quarters  
 kvart over ett, quarter past one  
 kvart på to, quarter to two  
 måte (c.), way  
 på samme måte, in the same way  
 fem minutter over ett, five minutes past one

ti minutter på to, ten minutes to two  
 klokken er fem på halv to, the time is five to half past one (1.25)  
 naturligvis, naturally; of course  
 tretti, thirty  
 førti, forty

jernbane (c.), railway  
 post (c.), post  
 offentlige, public  
 tjuefire, twenty-four  
 altså, therefore; consequently; accordingly  
 togtabell(en) (c.), (the) train time-table  
 et tog kommer, a train arrives  
 og går, and departs  
 betyr, means  
 (å bety, to mean)  
 midnatt (c.), midnight  
 klokken tolv midnatt, twelve o'clock midnight  
 togtid(er) (c.), time(s) of train(s), (*lit.* train-times)  
 o.l. (og lignende), and similar things  
 skrift (c.), writing  
 født, born

## Leksjon 20

### DAGER OG MÅNEDER. TIDEN

tjue, twenty  
 tjuende, twentieth  
 måned(er) (c.), month(s)  
 søndag, Sunday  
 mandag, Monday  
 tirsdag, Tuesday  
 onsdag, Wednesday  
 torsdag, Thursday  
 fredag, Friday  
 lørdag, Saturday  
 i morgen, tomorrow  
 i overmorgen, the day after tomorrow  
 i går, yesterday  
 i forgårs, the day before yesterday  
 ja så, did you; really; oh  
 gratulerer, congratulations  
 kalender(en) (c.), (the) calendar

januar, January  
 februar, February  
 mars, March  
 april, April  
 mai, May  
 juni, June  
 juli, July  
 august, August  
 september, September  
 oktober, October  
 november, November  
 desember, December  
 pålitelig, reliable  
 sakte, slow  
 nok, *here explicit*  
 urmaker(en) (c.), watch-maker  
 reparasjon (c.), repair

## Leksjon 21

### NORSK MYNT

tjueen, twenty-one  
 tjueførste, twenty-first  
 mynt (c.), coin; money  
 myntvesen, monetary system  
 bygger, builds  
 (å bygge, to build)  
 bygger på, is based on  
 desimalsystem(et) (n.), (the) decimal system  
 enkelt, simple  
 krone (c.), crown  
 deles i, is divided into  
 (å dele, to divide)  
 hundre, hundred  
 øre, smallest coin  
 kobber, copper  
 jernpenger, iron coins  
 kalles, are called  
 ettøring (c.), one øre piece  
 toøring, two øre piece  
 femøring, five øre piece  
 videre, furthermore  
 såkalt, so called  
 sølvmynt, silver coin  
 tjuefem, twenty-five  
 femti, fifty  
 alminnelige, ordinary; usual  
 betegnelse(r) (c.), term(s)  
 tiøring, ten øre piece  
 femogtjueøring, twenty-five øre piece  
 femtiøring, fifty øre piece  
 halvkroner, fifty øre  
 sedlene (c. pl.), the notes  
 (seddel, note)  
 utstedes, are issued

(å utstede, to issue)

utenlandske, foreign  
 penger, money  
 reisesjekk(er) (c.), travellers cheque(s)  
 veksle, (to) change; exchange  
 omtrent, nearly; almost; practically  
 bank(er) (c.), bank(s)  
 veksekontor (n.), exchange office  
 jernbanestasjon(en) (c.), (the) railway station  
 valutakurs(ene) (c.), (the) rate(s) of exchange  
 tydelig, clearly; plainly

lette, easy  
 skjønne, (to) understand  
 utstillingsvindu(er) (n.), display window(s)  
 nærmere, further  
 nærmere opplysninger, further particulars  
 bør, ought to  
 (å burde, to ought to)  
 for eksempel, for example; for instance  
 hva koster?, how much does ... cost?  
 (å koste, to cost)  
 damearmbåndsur(et) (n.), (the) lady's wrist watch  
 gull (n.), gold  
 ur (n.), watch  
 ekspeditrise(n) (c.), (the) saleslady  
 armbånds-ur(et) (n.), (the) wrist watch

## Leksjon 22 I BANKEN

tjueto, twenty-two  
tjueandre, twenty-second  
ønsker, want; wish  
(å ønske, to want; wish)  
engelske, English  
franske, French  
sveitsiske, Swiss  
amerikanske, American  
tyske, German  
vær så snill å regne ut, please work out  
hvor mye det blir, how much that will  
be  
et øyeblikk, just a moment  
tilsammen, altogether  
tusen, thousand  
utbetales, is paid out  
(å utbetale, to pay out)  
kasse(n) (c.), (the) cash desk  
hundrelapp, hundred (krone) note

tiere, ten krone notes  
femmere, five krone notes  
småpenger, small change  
sette pengene inn, deposit the money  
(å sette inn, to deposit)  
selvfølgelig, of course; obviously  
luke nr. 4, position (counter) no. 4  
lengst til høyre, last on the right;  
farthest on the right  
åpne, (to) open  
konto (c.), account  
sjekk-konto, cheque account  
jeg ville gjerne, I would like to  
sjekkbok (c.), cheque-book  
til å begynne med, for a start; to begin  
with  
oppgi, (to) give  
referanse(r) (c.), reference(s)  
greier det seg?, will that do?  
tilstrekkelig, sufficient

## Leksjon 23 POSTKONTORET

tjuetre, twenty-three  
tjuetredje, twenty-third  
postkontor(et) (n.), (the) post office  
feste, most  
sted(er) (n.), place(s)  
sende, (to) send  
brev (n.), letter  
kort (n.), card  
pakke (c.), parcel  
nødvendig, necessary  
å gå på, to go to  
legge, (to) put  
nærmeste, nearest  
postkasse (c.), post box

tømmes, is emptied  
(å tømme, to empty)  
flere ganger om dagen, several times a  
day  
når det haster, when it is urgent  
(å haste, to be urgent)  
med fly, by air  
ekspress, express; urgent  
bæres ut, are delivered; (*lit.* are carried  
out)  
postbud (n.), postman  
telegram (n.), telegram; cable  
telegrafbud, telegraph messenger  
det skjer på, that is done from

(å skje, to happen)  
telegrafstasjon(er) (c.), telegraph  
office(s)  
telefonboks(er) (c.), telephone box(es)  
bruk (c. and n.), use; employment  
til bruk for, for the use of  
publikum (n.), (the) public

stengt, closed  
ekspedisjon (c.), service; expedition  
ingen ekspedisjon, position closed (*lit.*  
no service)  
bak, behind  
luke(ne) (c.), (the) opening(s);  
hatch(es)  
postfunksjonær(ene) (c.), (the) post  
office staff  
ekspederer, serve; attend  
(å ekspedere, to serve, attend)  
holde på å, be -ing; be in the act of -ing  
holder på å innlevere, is handing in  
(å innlevere, to hand in)  
postgiro, post office cheque account;  
*approx.* money order or postal order  
en tredje, a third  
postsparebanken, the post office savings  
bank  
bakgrunn(en) (c.), (the) background  
trykksak(er), printed matter(s)

## Leksjon 24 PÅ POSTKONTORET

tjuefire, twenty-four  
tjuefjerde, twenty-fourth  
nok, enough; sufficiently; *here: expletive-*  
fremmed, a stranger  
kan si Dem det, can tell you  
hovedgate(n) (c.), (the) high street  
vei(en) (c.), (the) way  
jeg skal den veien selv, I am going that  
way myself  
slå følge med, (to) accompany; join  
bygning(en) (c.), (the) building  
årsak (c.), reason; cause  
ingen årsak, don't mention it; it's a  
pleasure  
frimerke(r) (n.), stamp(s)  
jeg skulle sende, I want to send  
innenlands, within the country  
portotakst(ene) (c.), (the) postal  
rate(s)

nordiske, Scandinavian  
porto(en), (the) postage  
inntil, up to  
gram, gramme  
dobbelte, double  
stort sett, on the whole; broadly speak-  
ing  
forhold(et) (n.), (the) condition  
selve portotakstene, the postal rates  
themselves  
endret, altered; changed  
(å endre, to alter; change)  
atskillig, considerably  
løp (n.), course  
i tidens løp, in the course of time  
endel, some  
er De snill, please; kindly  
aerogram (n.), air letter  
forresten, by the way; however  
med det samme, while I am at it

## Leksjon 25 REISER

tjuefem, twenty-five  
tjuefemte, twenty-fifth  
reise(r) (c.), travel(s)  
nå for tiden, nowadays  
velge, (to) choose  
transportmidler (n. pl.), means of  
transport  
sykler (c. pl.), bicycles  
(sykkel, bicycle)  
moped(er) (c.), moped(s)  
scooter(e) (c.), scooter(s)  
motorsykler (c. pl.), motorbikes  
bekvemme, comfortable  
buss(er) (c.), bus(es)  
bil(er) (c.), car(s)  
kjøre, (to) drive  
lange, long  
strekning(er) (c.), distance(s)  
båt(er) (c.), boat(s)  
over, across; over  
hav(et) (n.), (the) ocean  
det ene . . . det andre, one . . . to  
another  
kontinent (n.), continent  
flyrute(r) (c.), air route(s)  
verdensdel(er) (c.), part(s) of the world  
fly (n.), aeroplane(s)

livlig, lively  
plattform (c.), platform  
stanser, stops  
(å stanse, to stop)  
noen går av andre går på, some get off  
others get on  
billett (c.), ticket  
i forveien, beforehand  
kan det hende, it may happen  
(å hende, to happen)  
kø (c.), queue  
billettluke(ne) (c.), (the) ticket coun-  
ter(s)

aviskiosk(en) (c.), (the) newspaper  
kiosk; bookstall  
underholdningslektyre, entertaining read-  
ing matter  
reisegods, traveller's luggage  
folk, people  
hente, (to) fetch  
leter, search  
(å lete, to search)  
leter etter, search for; look for  
venterom(mene) (n.), (the) waiting  
room(s)



## Leksjon 26 JERNBANESTASJONER

tjueseks, twenty-six  
tjuesjette, twenty-sixth  
første klasse, first class  
hurtigtog, express train  
tur eller tur-retur?, single or return?  
plassbillett (c.), seat reservation  
helst, preferably  
jeg ville helst ha, I would prefer  
hjørneplass (c.), corner seat  
forlengs, facing the engine; forwards  
røkekupe (c.), smoking compartment

## Leksjon 27 MED BÅT OG FLY

tjuesju, twenty-seven  
tjuesjuende, twenty-seventh  
forrige, former; previous  
forrige uke, last week  
fulgte, accompanied  
(å følge, to accompany)  
brygge(n) (c.), (the) quay  
han skulle ta båten, he was going by boat  
fikk, got; had  
(å få, to get; have)  
anledning (c.), opportunity  
ombord, on board  
motorskip(et) (n.), (the) motor ship  
se meg om, have a look round  
promenadedekk(et) (n.), (the) promenade deck  
stuer(ne) (c.), (the) stevedore(s)  
laste, (to) load  
kran(en) (c.), (the) crane  
løftet, lifted  
(å løfte, to lift)  
gods(et) (n.), (the) cargo; goods  
stuet, stowed  
(å stue, to stow)  
lasterom(mene) (n.), (the) hold(s)  
kaptein(en) (c.), (the) captain  
styrmann(en) (c.), (the) mate  
oppsyn (n.), charge; supervision  
hadde oppsyn med, was in charge of  
forberedelse(ne) (c.), (the) preparation(s)  
avreise(n) (c.), (the) departure  
plutselig, suddenly  
tutet, tooted  
(å tute, to toot)  
de besøkende, the visitors

bærer (c.), porter  
javel, certainly; O.K.  
hvor skal De?, where are you going?  
koffert(en) (c.), (the) suitcase  
venter på, wait for  
bagasjebrett(et) (n.), (the) luggage rack  
vogn (c.), carriage  
like ved, just by  
spisevogn(en) (c.), (the) dining car  
bordplass (c.), seat at the table  
betjening(en) (c.), (the) staff  
når kommer jeg til?, when do I arrive at?

skyndte seg, hurried  
(å skynde seg, to hurry)  
landgang(en) (c.), (the) gangway  
straks, soon; immediately  
straks etterpå, soon afterwards  
fartøy(et) (n.), (the) craft; boat  
kurs(en) (c.), (the) course  
satte fartøyet kursen, the boat set course  
mot, towards  
fjord(en) (c.), (the) fjord  
passasjer(ene) (c.), (the) passenger(s)  
stod, stood  
(å stå, to stand)  
ved rekken, by the railing  
vinket, waved  
(å vinke, to wave)  
slektning(er) (c.), relation(s)  
kai(en) (c.), (the) quay; wharf  
gled, glided  
(å gli, to glide)  
forbi, past  
dokk(er) (c.), dock(s)  
forsvant, disappeared  
(å forsvinne, to disappear)  
syn (n.), sight  
ut av syne, out of sight

noen dager senere, a few days later  
Tyskland, Germany  
det gjaldt for meg, it was important to me  
(å gjelde, be worth; concern)  
fram, forth; forward  
å komme fort fram, to get there quickly  
jeg tok fly, I went by plane; I took a plane  
flyplass(en) (c.), (the) airport  
kjempestort, gigantic; enormous  
startklart, ready for the start

startet, took off; started  
(å starte, to take off; to start)  
i rute, on time

## Leksjon 28 OMBORD

tjueåtte, twenty-eight  
tjueåttende, twenty-eighth  
denne veien, this way  
klar, ready  
hold billettene klare, keep the tickets ready  
fortsett, carry on; continue  
så langt, so far  
dekk (n.), deck  
ned, below; down  
sjøsyk, seasick  
stille, quiet  
blåse opp, (to) blow up  
tur (c.), trip  
sol(en) (c.), (the) sun  
forsøke, (to) try  
rett, right; correct  
du har rett, you are right  
storm (c.), storm  
i natt, tonight  
unngå, (to) avoid  
mulig, possible  
så mye som mulig, as much as possible  
i fjor, last year  
formøyelse (c.), pleasure  
må jeg si, I must say

## Leksjon 29 EN GATE I OSLO

tjueni, twenty-nine  
tjueniende, twenty-ninth  
gate (c.), street  
viktigste, most important  
forretningsstrøk (n.), shopping centre  
tett i tett, close together  
fortau(ene) (n.), (the) pavement(s)  
fotgjenger(e) (c.), pedestrian(s)  
utstilling(en) (c.), the display  
butikkvindu(ene) (n.), (the) shop window(s)  
kjørebane(n) (c.), (the) roadway  
uavbrutt rekke, uninterrupted line  
(å avbryte, to interrupt)  
trikk(er) (c.), tram(s)  
privatbil(er) (c.), private car(s)  
drosje(r) (c.), taxi(s)  
lastebil(er) (c.), lorry (lorries)  
farlig, dangerous  
krysse, (to) cross

(27-29)

vi kom i rute, we arrived on time  
bestemmelsessted (n.), destination  
landing (c.), landing

flyr, fly  
(å fly, to fly)  
isteden, instead  
trygt, safe  
neste gang, next time  
hvert, any; every  
fall (n.), case; event  
i hvert fall, anyway; in any case  
verre, worse  
ordentlig, proper; real  
sjøgang, heavy seas; rough  
fortere, quicker  
man kommer mye fortere fram, one gets there much quicker  
ene, one  
fra det ene til det annet, by the way, changing the subject (*lit.* from the one to the other)  
pass- og tollkontroll, passport and customs check  
husker jeg riktig, if I remember correctly  
(å huske, to remember)  
passene (n. pl.), (the) passports  
kontrollert, checked  
i land, ashore  
fortolte, (to) declare  
ikke det jeg vet, not as far as I know

legge merke til, notice; pay attention  
trafikklysene, the traffic lights  
oppmerkede, marked  
overgang(ene) (c.), (the) crossing(s)  
fotgjenger(e) (c.), pedestrian(s)  
overgangene for fotgjengere, the crossings for pedestrians

domkirke (c.), cathedral  
blomstertorv (n.), flower market  
torvkoner, stall women  
selger, sell  
(å selge, to sell)  
året rundt, all the year round  
torv(et) (n.), (the) market place  
nedover, down  
slott(et) (n.), palace; castle  
omgitt av, surrounded by  
(å omgi, to surround)  
festningsvoll(er) (c.), rampart(s)

utsikt (c.), view  
havn (c.), harbour

om natten, during the night; at night  
time  
opplyst med, lit by  
elektrisk, electric  
gatelykt(ene) (c.), (the) street lamp(s)  
langs, along; alongside  
fortauskant(en) (c.), (the) kerb

### Leksjon 30

#### HVORDAN MAN SPØR OM VEIEN

tretti, thirty  
trettiende, thirtieth  
vei(en) (c.), (the) way  
Rådhuset, the Town Hall  
glede (c.), pleasure; joy  
med glede, with pleasure  
forklare, (to) explain  
følger, follow  
(å følge, to follow)  
oppover, up  
Stortinget, National Assembly; Parlia-  
ment  
tar til venstre, turn left  
rett inn i, straight into  
borggård(en) (c.), (the) courtyard  
langt, far  
i høyden, at the most  
et kvarters tid, a quarter of an hour  
stopper, stops  
(å stoppe, to stop)

### Leksjon 31

#### ET BESØK I OSLO

trettien, thirty-one  
trettiførste, thirty-first  
under, during  
kortvarig, short  
kunne det være, it might be  
naturlig, natural  
herfra, from here  
hovedstadens, the capital's  
festgate, ceremonial street  
marsjerer, marches  
(å marsjere, to march)  
barnetog, children's procession  
hvert, every  
år (n.), year  
nasjonaldagen, the national day  
skolebarna, the schoolchildren  
faner, banners  
flagg (n.), flag  
passere, walk past  
kongelige, royal  
kongefamilien, the Royal Family

øy(er), island(s)  
midt i kjørebanelen, in the middle of the  
roadway  
fester, fixed  
hovedgate(ne) (c.), (the) main street(s)  
lysreklame(r), neon advertisement(s)  
skilt(er) (n.), sign(s)  
vindusbelysning, window lighting  
lyse, light

i nærheten, near  
Nationaltheatret, the National Theatre  
passer, are suitable  
politikonstabel (c.), policeman  
helt sikker, quite sure  
hjelpen, the help  
påstigning(en) (c.), (the) boarding  
ved påstigningen, on boarding  
vil De være så elskverdig å si fra?, will  
you be kind enough to tell me?  
når vi er ved, when we get to  
jeg skal si fra, I will tell you  
gå lenger inn i vogna, move further  
down the car(riage)  
røking forbudt, smoking forbidden; no  
smoking  
(å forby, to forbid)  
se opp for dørene, mind the doors  
tverrgate (c.), side turning

hilser, greet  
slottsbalkongen, the palace balcony  
største, largest  
teater (n.), theatre  
videre, further  
park (c.), park  
som kalles, called  
stortingsbygningen, the parliament build-  
ing  
holder til, is seated  
nasjonalforsamling, national assembly;  
parliament

verdt, worth  
anløpes, is called on  
daglig, daily  
skip (n.), ship  
yrende, teeming  
liv (n.), life  
mot, towards; facing  
ut mot havnen, facing the harbour

yttervegger, outer walls  
ypperlige, excellent  
skulpturer (c.), sculptures  
bør, ought to; must  
all, all  
absolutt, definitely; absolutely  
praktfulle, magnificent  
malerkunst, works of art  
smykker, adorn; decorate  
mest kjente, best known  
maler(e) (c.), painter(s)  
dekorert, decorated  
sal(er) (c.), room(s)  
imponerende, impressive  
veggmalerier (n.), wall paintings; murals  
inspirert, inspired  
historie, history  
arbeidsliv, working life

### Leksjon 32

#### SEVERDIGHETER

trettito, thirty-two  
trettiandre, thirty-second  
mulig, possible  
i løpet av, in the course of  
avhenger, depends  
vær(et) (n.), (the) weather  
omegn, surrounding district  
undergrunnsstasjon(en) (c.), (the) un-  
derground station  
ås(ene) (c.), (the) hill(s); (the) ridge(s)  
høyde (c.), height  
ca. (cirka), about  
meter (c.), metre  
meter over havet, metres above sea level  
landevei(en) (c.), (the) country lane;  
road  
til fots, by foot  
skibakke(n) (c.), (the) ski slope  
internasjonale, international  
dit ut, out there

### Leksjon 33

#### I STORMAGASINET

trettitre, thirty-three  
trettitredje, thirty-third  
stormagasinet (n.), (the) depart-  
ment store  
i formiddag, this morning  
avdeling(en) (c.), (the) department  
overall, everywhere  
vennlig, friendly

enestående, unique  
samling (c.), collection  
kunst, art  
omkring, around  
fonteneanlegg (n.), fountain construc-  
tion  
gruppert, grouped  
mylder, swarm; crowd  
granitt, granite  
bronse, bronze  
kulturhistorisk interessant, interested in  
the history of civilization  
besøke, (to) visit  
først og fremst, first and foremost  
vikingskip(ene), (the) viking ship(s)  
turist (c.), tourist  
glemme, (to) forget

farkost(er) (c.), craft(s)  
polarskip, polar ship  
Kontiki-flåte, Kontiki-raft  
hørt om, heard about  
fontene (c.), fountain  
skulpturgalleri, sculpture gallery  
friluft, open air  
kunstinteressert, interested in art  
Nasjonalgalleriet, the National Gallery  
representert, represented  
både, both  
arkitektonisk, architecturally  
kunstnerisk, artistically  
severdige, worth seeing  
bebyggelse(n) (c.), (the) built up area  
bykjerne(n), (the) town centre  
sightseeingbusser, sightseeing buses  
kunne, could  
sommer(en) (c.), (the) summer  
ha glede av, find pleasure in  
rundtur, trip round

sportsartikler, sports articles  
leketøy, toys

traff, met  
(å treffe, to meet)  
venninne, friend (/.)  
på mange år, for many years  
drakk, drank  
(å drikke, to drink)  
fortalte, told  
(å fortelle, to tell)  
hun var gift, she was married  
den eldste, the oldest  
skole (c.), school

### Leksjon 34 SHOPPING

trettifire, thirty-four  
trettifjerde, thirty-fourth  
hanske (c.), glove  
slags, kind; type  
fôret, lined  
ufôret, unlined  
sort(er) (c.), sort(s); kind(s)  
nummer (n.), size; number  
frue(n) (c.), madam  
synes om, (to) like  
disse, these  
anbefale, (to) recommend  
utsøkt, finest, *lit.* select  
kvalitet, quality  
rimelig, reasonable  
hva koster de?, how much do they cost?

### Leksjon 35 VI KJØPER KLÆR

trettifem, thirty-five  
trettifemte, thirty-fifth  
kjøper, buy  
skredder (c.), tailor  
ny, new  
dress (c.), suit  
jakke (c.), jacket  
benklær, trousers  
frakk (c.), coat  
utslitt, worn out  
jeg har ikke råd, I can't afford it  
(å ha råd, to afford)  
regnfrakk (c.), raincoat

utvalg (n.), selection  
stoff(er) (n.), material(s)

mormor, grandmother (mother's mother)  
morfar, grandfather (mother's father)  
nylig, recently  
død, dead  
var nylig død, had recently died

satt, sat  
(å sitte, to sit)  
pratet, talked  
hvor glade vi var, how pleased we were  
pleide, used to  
sammen, together  
dro, went; moved  
(å dra, to go; move)

passer, fit  
spasersko, walking shoes  
selskapssko, dressy shoes  
solide, strong  
lav, low  
hæl (c.), heel  
prøv, try  
kjennes, (to) feel  
hvordan kjennes de?, how do they feel?  
klemmer, pinch  
tærne (c. pl.), toes  
(rå, toe)  
gi seg, (to) give  
ekspeditør (c.), attendant; shop assist-  
ant

bestemt meg for, decided on  
(å bestemme, to decide)  
tok mål av, measured  
(å ta mål av, to measure)  
om to uker, in two weeks  
for den sitter, before it fits  
som den skal, as it should

uke(n) (c.), (the) week  
pels (c.), fur coat  
ferdigsydd, ready made; off the peg  
drakt (c.), costume  
dvs. (det vil si), i.e. (that is to say)  
skjørt (n.), skirt  
ennå, still; yet  
greidd, managed  
(å greie, to manage)  
bluse (c.), blouse

på den annen side, on the other hand  
heldig, lucky  
har hun vært så heldig, she has been  
lucky enough  
fôtt, smart; stylish  
eksklusiv, exclusive

motesalong (c.), (fashion) salon  
kler, suits  
redd, afraid  
nokså snart, pretty soon  
umoderne, out of fashion

### Leksjon 36 HOS SKREDDEREN

trettitseks, thirty-six  
trettisjette, thirty-sixth  
få sydd en dress, have a suit made  
(å sy, to sew)  
tøy(et) (n.), (the) material  
tynt, thin  
høst(en) (c.), (the) autumn  
mørkere, darker  
varmere, warmer

### DAMEN KJØPER KJOLE

kjole, dress; frock  
prøverom(met) (n.), (the) fitting  
room  
aller, very; by far  
ny(e), new  
det aller siste nye, the very latest  
modell(en) (c.), (the) model  
smart, smart  
farve(n) (c.), (the) colour

hva vil en dress komme på?, how much  
would a suit come to?  
(å komme på, to cost)  
av dette stoffet, in this material; from  
this material  
garantert, guaranteed  
helull, all wool  
jeg hadde tenkt meg, I had intended  
lønner seg, pays  
lov, permission; leave  
skal jeg så få lov å ta mål, then may I  
take your measurements

størrelse(r) (c.), size(s)  
marineblått, navy  
lyserødt, pink  
grønt, green  
sort, black  
litt for lang, a little too long  
legge opp, shorten

sydame (c.), dressmaker

### Leksjon 37 TOBAKK

trettisju, thirty-seven  
trettisjuende, thirty-seventh  
tobakk, tobacco  
tobakksbutikk(ene) (c.), (the) tobac-  
conist's (tobacconists')  
tiltaler, appeal to  
mest, most  
fordi, because  
aldri, never  
titte, (to) peep  
fristende, tempting  
blanke, shining  
pipe(ne) (c.), (the) pipe(s)  
delikate, delicious; nice; dainty

sigarkasse(ne) (c.), (the) cigar box(es)

pipetobakk, pipe-tobacco  
sigar(er) (c.), cigar(s)  
prislag (n.), price groups; price levels  
foretrekke, (to) prefer  
foretrekker man sigaretter, if one prefers  
cigarettes  
virginia, Virginia  
"toasted", American type cigarette  
tyrkiske, Turkish  
egyptiske, Egyptian  
merke (n.), brand; manufacture

fyrstikk(er) (c.), match(es)  
billige, cheap  
heller, rather  
lighter (c.), lighter

tobakkshandler(en), (the) tobacconist  
tobakkspung(er) (c.), tobacco-pouch(es)

## Leksjon 38

## JEG KJØPER RØKESAKER

trettiåtte, thirty-eight  
trettiåttende, thirty-eighth  
røkesaker, smoker's requisites; smoker's  
supplies

kan jeg få?, may I have?

pakke (c.), packet

som vanlig, as usual

milde, mild

dyre, expensive

heller, either

en 10 pakning, a packet of 10

eske (c.), box

en eske fyrstikker, a box of matches

sigarettetu(er) (n.), cigarette case(s)  
sigarettmunnstykke(r) (n.), cigarette  
holder(s)

kort sagt, briefly; in fact

selger, sell

ukeblad(er) (n.), weekly magazine(s)

sjokolade, chocolate

snaddetobakk, pipe-tobacco

sant, true; right

rikelig, plentiful

små, small

jeg går ut fra at, I take it that

hollandske, Dutch

ekstra, extra

stykke(r) (n.), piece(s)

da tar jeg 10 stykker av dem, then I

will take 10 of them

flintesten(er) (c.), flint(s)

pakke det inn, wrap it up

(å pakke inn, to wrap up)

## Leksjon 39

## HOS FRISØREN

trettini, thirty-nine

trettiniende, thirty-ninth

frisør(en) (c.), (the) hairdresser; barber

er blitt, has become

viktig, important

person (c.), person

samfunn(et) (n.), (the) society

klippe, cut

hår(et) (n.), (the) hair

jevne, regular

mellomrom, intervals

skjegg (n.), beard

stusses, be trimmed

barberer, shave

hos barberen, at the barber's

vasket, shampooed; washed

ondulert, set

frisersalong (c.), hairdressing saloon

barbermester(en) (c.), (the) master

barber

tur (c.), turn

forlate, (to) leave

barbersvenn(ene) (c.), (the) barber's

assistant(s)

børster, brushes

barberhovel (c.), safety razor

kinn (n.), cheek

hake (c.), chin

gnidd, rubbed

(å gni, to rub)

såpeskum, lather

fremmed person, strange person; stranger

lettvintere, easier

elektrisk barbermaskin, electric razor

mannfolk, men

enkelte, some

sterk, strong

skjeggvekst, growth (of beard)

to ganger, twice

dersom, if

de skal være, they are going to be

velbarbert, well shaven

## Leksjon 40

## JEG GÅR TIL BARBEREN

førti, forty

førtiende, fortieth

manikyr (c.), manicure

så lenge, for a minute; while you wait

det blir ikke lenge å vente, it won't be

long to wait

manikyrist(en) (c.), (the) manicurist

imens, in the meantime

øre(ne) (n.), (the) ear(s)

tørt, dry

sjampo (c.), shampoo

det ville ha godt av en shampo, a sham-

poo would do it good

vær forsiktig, be careful

hud (c.), skin

stole på, rely on

skærer, cut

(å skjære, to cut)

dameavdeling (c.), ladies' department

frue (c.), wife

permanent (c.), perm

bestille time, make an appointment

navn(et) (n.), (the) name

## Leksjon 41

## ÅRSTIDENE

førtien, forty-one

førtiførste, forty-first

vår (c.), spring

vinter (c.), winter

om våren, in the spring

våkner, wakes up

natur(en) (c.), (the) nature

vintersøvn, winter sleep

skinner, shines

knopp(ene) (c.), (the) bud(s)

skyter, swell; shoot

trær (n. pl.), trees

(tre, tree)

busk(er) (c.), bush(es)

løv(et) (n.), (the) foliage

spretter, break

løvet spretter, the leaves come out

fugl(ene) (c.), (the) bird(s)

synger, sing

(å synge, to sing)

kvitrer, twitter

himmel(en) (c.), (the) sky

blå, blue

uten, without

sky (c.), cloud

ute på, out in

mark(ene) (c.), (the) field(s)

plover, ploughs

sår, sows

bonde(n) (c.), (the) farmer

høyere, higher

skole(ne) (c.), (the) school(s)

ferie (c.), holiday

tar ferie, start their holiday

flytter, move

sommersted(er), summer residence(s)

fjell(et) (n.), (the) mountain

på fjellet, in the mountains

sjø(en) (c.), (the) sea

netters (c. pl. gen.), nights'

(natt, night)

juni er de lyse netters tid, June is the

time of light nights

Sankthans, midsummer

begynner, begins; starts

travel, busy

slått(en) (c.), (the) mowing; haymak-

ing

det gjelder, it is important

høy(et) (n.), (the) hay

låve(n) (c.), (the) barn

fint, fine

tunge, heavy

over, across; over

tordenvær (n.), thundery weather

det kommer tordenvær, thundery

weather is coming

lyne, (to) lighten

tordne, (to) thunder

regne, (to) rain

det lyner, tordner og regner, we get

lightning, thunder and rain

etter hvert, as time goes on; gradually

korn(et) (n.), (the) corn

blir modent, ripens

(å modne—å bli moden, to ripen)

skjæres, is cut

(å skjære, to cut)

kjøres, is driven; carted

(å kjøre, to drive; cart)

i hus, inside; under cover

kjølige, cool; chilly

hostes, be harvested

gul, yellow

brun, brown

rod, red

til sist, in the end; at last  
bare (pl.), bare; naked  
vind(en) (c.), (the) wind  
blad (n.), leaf  
vann (n.), lake(s)  
elv(er) (c.), river(s)

## Leksjon 42

## LEK, SPORT OG FRILUFTSLIV

fortito, forty-two  
fortiandre, forty-second  
lek (c.), game  
friluftsliv (n.), open air life  
mener De, do you think  
populær, popular  
det kommer an på, it depends on  
del (c.), part  
gjelder, concerns  
fotball(en) (c.), (the) football  
fridrett (c.), athletics  
løp (n.), running  
sprang (n.), long jump  
hopp (n.), high jump  
kast (n.), throwing (e.g. javelin, discus, etc.)  
dyrket, cultivated; enjoyed  
håndball, netball  
golf, golf  
spilles, is played  
få, few  
tennis, tennis  
uthbredt, widespread  
utendørs, outdoors  
innendørs, indoors  
seiling (c.), sailing  
nasjonalsport (c.), national sport  
roing, rowing  
svømming, swimming  
idrettsgrener, branches of sport  
fottur(er) (c.), walk(s)  
vinteridrett (c.), winter sports

## Leksjon 43

Første del  
SOMMERFERIE PÅ LANDET

fortitre, forty-three  
fortitredje, forty-third  
sommerferie (c.), summer holiday  
gardbruker (c.), farmer

fryser, freeze  
snø(en) (c.), (the) snow  
unge, youngsters  
fryder seg, rejoice  
sport(en) (c.), (the) sport  
drive, carry on with; exercise

gjort seg gjeldende, asserted themselves  
så snart, as soon as  
snoen har lagt seg, the snow has settled  
sparkstøtting (c.), "sparkstøtting"  
kjelke(r) (c.), sledge(s)  
ski (c.), ski(s)  
skøyte(r) (c.), skate(s)  
gå på ski, (to) ski  
er noe alle gjør, is something everybody does  
spøkefullt, jokingly  
er født, are born  
bena (n. pl.), the feet  
(ben, foot)  
skøyteløper(e) (c.), skater(s)  
feiret, celebrated  
store, great  
triumf(er), triumph(s)  
blant, among; amongst  
ungdom, youth; young people  
bandy (c.), bandy  
ishockey (c.), ice hockey  
stadig, steadily  
turning, gymnastics  
gymnastikk, physical training  
badminton, badminton  
bordtennis, table tennis  
form(er) (c.), type(s)  
spill (n.), play; game  
nevne, (to) mention  
sjakk, chess  
kortspill (n.), card game(s)  
bridge, bridge

gård (c.), farm  
til den hørte, to it belonged  
(å) tilhøre, to belong to  
jord (c.), land; soil

dyrket jord, cultivated land  
åker (c.), fields  
eng (c.), meadows  
skog (c.), forests; woods  
gjøre, (to) do  
jeg fikk lov til, I was allowed; I got permission to  
følge med, join in  
aller helst, most of all; preferably  
stall(en) (c.), (the) stable  
ikke mindre enn, no less than  
hest(er) (c.), horse(s)  
igjen, left  
erstattet, replaced  
traktor(er) (c.), tractor(s)

krøtter, cattle; livestock  
ku(ene) (c.), (the) cow(s)  
bås(er) (c.), stall(s)  
fjøs(et) (n.), (the) cow shed  
kalvene (c.), the calves  
(kalv, calf)  
særskilte, special  
bing(er) (c.), pen(s)  
sauebing(ene) (c.), (the) sheep pen(s), fold(s)  
sau(er) (c.), sheep  
lam (n.), lamb  
geit(er) (c.), goat(s)  
grisebing(en) (c.), (the) pigsty  
gris(er) (c.), pig(s)  
grisunge(r) (c.), piglet(s)  
høns(e)hus(et) (n.), (the) hen house  
vrirlet, was swarming  
høne(r) (c.), hen(s)  
kylling(er) (c.), chicken(s)

## Anden del

## ARBEIDET PÅ EN GARD

arbeid(et) (n.), (the) work  
stå opp, get up  
dit, there  
holdt de på å høye, they were haymaking  
(å høye, make hay)  
melke, (to) milk  
jorde(t) (n.), (the) field  
slo, mowed; cut  
(å slå, to mow; cut)  
hesje(ne) (c.), (the) drying stand(s), (racks)  
tørket, dried  
dårlig, bad  
melkingen, the milking  
fisket, fished  
vi behøvde ikke, we did not have to  
(å behøve, to need)

enkelt, single  
hane (c.), cock  
spaserte, walked  
kalkun(ene) (c.), (the) turkey(s)  
gjessene (c. pl.), the geese  
(gås, goose)  
dam(men) (c.), (the) pond  
plasket, splashed  
endene (c. pl.), the ducks  
(and, duck)

herlig, lovely; glorious  
frukthage (c.), orchard  
bugnet, were heavy  
saftige, juicy  
plomme(r) (c.), plum(s)  
veldige, enormous  
mengder (c. pl.), quantities; amounts  
(mengde, quantity; amount)  
bringeber, raspberries  
rips, redcurrants  
stikkelsbær, gooseberries  
vi holdt helst til på, we preferably stayed on  
jordbærstykke(t) (n.), (the) strawberry patch  
så mye vi ville, as much as we liked  
fullmodne, fully ripe  
jordbær (n.), strawberries

låve (c.), barn  
låvebru (c.), flying ramp giving access for haywagons to barn loft  
silo (c.), silo  
stabbur (n.), storehouse

arbeide, (to) work  
hele tiden, all the time  
badet vi, we went swimming  
en gang i mellom, now and then; occasionally  
handle, (to) shop  
trodd, believed  
kjedelig, dull; miserable; boring  
slett ikke—tvert imot, definitely not—the contrary  
føle seg, (to) feel  
sunn, healthy  
opplagt, energetic; up to it  
jeg skulle gjerne bli bonde, I would like to become a farmer

kirke (c.), church



## Leksjon 44

### Første del

#### VED SJØEN

førtifire, forty-four  
fjortifjerde, forty-fourth  
oppholde Dem, stay  
(å oppholde seg, to stay)  
badested (n.), seaside resort  
det er nok av, there is plenty of  
lenger, further  
bort, away  
dra ned på, go down to  
Sørlandet, southern part of Norway  
saltere, saltier  
på de fleste steder, in most places  
lett, easily  
pensjonat (n.), boarding house  
badestrand (c.), beach  
slå seg ned, settle down  
bade, (to) bathe  
sole seg, (to) sunbathe  
på sjø og land, in the sea and on land;  
in and out of the sea  
vasser, paddle  
utover, out; outward  
bølge(ne) (c.), (the) wave(s)  
rulle, (to) roll  
rulle innover seg, roll over them  
på land, ashore; on shore  
sand(en) (c.), (the) sand

her ved siden, alongside  
bade plass (c.), seaside place  
Sør-Norge, Southern Norway  
solbelyst, sunny; sunlit  
knaus(er) (c.), crag(s)  
svaberg (n.), slopes of naked rock  
badende, bathers  
voksne, adults; grown-ups  
om hverandre, intermingled  
tilbringer, spend  
behøver, need  
badehus, bathing tent; hut  
skifte, (to) change  
badedrakt (c.), swimming suit  
skifte på seg badedrakt, change into  
swimming suit

holme (c.), islet  
skjær (n.), skerry  
usjenert, at one's ease; undisturbed  
menneske(ne) (n.), (the) people  
badegjest(er) (c.), bathing or summer-  
guest(s)  
leier, hire; rent  
robåt (c.), rowing boat  
ferierer, are on holiday  
dra ut og fiske, go out fishing

### Annen del

#### FERIEPLANER

ferieplan(er) (c.), holiday plan(s)  
vi ville gjerne til utlandet, we would  
like to go abroad  
nødig, reluctant(ly)  
min kone vil nødig reise fra barna, my  
wife is reluctant to leave the chil-  
dren  
(å reise fra, to leave)  
ligge ved sjøen, stay at the seaside  
biltur (c.), car journey; trip  
alene, alone  
bli igjen, leave behind  
løpe, (to) run  
nakne, naked  
spiller ingen rolle, does not matter  
hovedsaken, the main thing; what mat-  
ters  
luft (c.), air

kropp(en) (c.), (the) body  
krabbe(r) (c.), crab(s)  
(ta inn, put up)  
ta inn på hotell, stay at a hotel  
privat, private  
bo privat, stay privately  
hytte (c.), cottage; cabin  
hvorfor, why  
hvorfor slår du ikke følge?, why don't  
you join us?  
(å slå følge, to join)  
idé (c.), idea  
jeg skal høre med min kone, I will find  
out from my wife  
(å høre med, to ask)  
beskjed (c.), message  
la meg få beskjed, let me know (lit. let  
me get a message)  
så snart som mulig, as soon as possible

## Leksjon 45

### Første del

#### BILKJØRING

førtifem, forty-five  
fjortifemte, forty-fifth  
bilkjøring, driving a car; motoring  
studere, (to) study  
trafikkreglene, the traffic rules  
nøye, carefully  
lære, (to) learn  
fagtekniske, technical  
uttrykk (n.), expression(s)  
utlending, foreigner  
huske, (to) remember  
høyrekjøring, driving on the right  
Norge har høyrekjøring, in Norway one  
drives on the right  
tettbygge, built up  
strøk (n.), area(s)  
fart(en) (c.), (the) speed  
begrenset, limited  
pass på, watch; take care  
fastsatte, laid down; fixed  
(å fastsette, to fix)  
fartsgrense (c.), speed limit  
overskredet, exceeded  
(å overskride, to exceed)  
legg merke til, note carefully; observe  
trafikkskilt(ene) (n.), (the) traffic  
sign(s)  
påvirket, influenced  
alkohol, alcohol  
påvirket av alkohol, under the influence  
of alcohol  
streng, severe; strict  
straffebestemmelse(r) (c.), penal regu-  
lation(s)

se litt på, have a look at  
personbil (c.), private car  
sekssylindret, six-cylinder  
motor (c.), engine  
bak på, at the back of  
vogn(en) (c.), (the) car  
bagasjerom(met) (n.), (the) boot  
reserverdekk (n.), spare tyre  
reservehjul (n.), spare wheel  
verktøy, tools  
jekk (c.), jack  
ofte, often  
kjetting(er) (c.), chain(s)  
hjul(ene) (n.), (the) wheel(s)

understell (n.), chassis  
panser (n.), bonnet  
karosseri (n.), body  
radiator (c.), radiator  
ratt (n.), steering wheel  
bensintank (c.), petrol tank  
fotbrems (c.), footbrake  
håndbrems (c.), hand-brake  
clutch (c.), clutch  
frontglass(et) (n.), (the) windscreen  
forsynt med, equipped with  
vinduspussere, windscreen wipers  
instrumentbord(et) (n.), (the) dash-  
board  
speedometer (n.), speedometer  
bensinmåler (c.), petrol gauge  
selvstarterknapp (c.), starter  
frontlykt (c.), headlamp

### Annen del

#### BILEN ER I USTAND

i ustand, out of order  
undersøke, (to) examine  
vei (c.), way; road  
i veien, the matter  
hva som er i veien, what is the matter  
batteri(et) (n.), (the) battery  
utladet, flat  
ble batteriet nesten utladet, the battery  
nearly went flat  
renset, cleaned  
tennplugg(ene) (c.), (the) sparking  
plug(s)

forgasser(en) (c.), (the) carburettor  
i orden, in order; O.K.; all right  
sørge for, (to) see to it; arrange  
mekaniker(en) (c.), (the) mechanic  
så skal jeg nok kunne si, then I shall be  
able to tell  
ledningsrør(et) (n.), (the) pipe  
pumpe (c.), pump  
skadd, damaged  
byttes ut, be changed  
samtidig, at the same time  
lade opp, (to) charge

smøre, (to) grease; lubricate  
 reparere, (to) repair  
 skade(n) (c.), (the) damage  
 kontrollere, (to) check; control  
 trykk(et) (n.), (the) pressure  
 ring(ene) (c.), (the) tyre(s)  
 forskjerm (c.), front wing  
 støtfanger(en) (c.), (the) bumper

rettes litt opp, be straightened a little  
 (å rette, to straighten)  
 bulk(er) (c.), dent(s)  
 skled, skidded  
 (å skli, to skid)  
 glatte, slippery  
 føre(t) (n.), approx.: state of surface of road  
 lyktstolpe (c.), lamp-post  
 ringe, (to) telephone; call

## NEW LEGEN

### Leksjon 46

#### Første del HANDEL OG INDUSTRI

førtiseks, forty-six  
 førtisjette, forty-sixth  
 handel, commerce  
 industri, industry  
 bondeland (n.), agricultural country  
 lever, live  
 (å leve, to live)  
 lever av, live on; get their living from  
 en femtedel, one fifth  
 befolkning (c.), population  
 jordbruk, farming  
 fedrift, cattle raising  
 bygg, barley  
 havre, oats  
 rug, rye  
 hvete, wheat  
 skogbruk, forestry  
 rolle (c.), part  
 spiller en stor rolle, plays an important part  
 milevide, mile long; miles  
 gran, Norway spruce; fir  
 furu, pine  
 østlige, eastern  
 mellomste, middle  
 felt, cut down; felled  
 (å felle, to cut down; fell)  
 fløtes, is floated  
 tømmer(et) (n.), (the) timber  
 papir (n.), paper  
 cellulosefabrikker, cellulose factories  
 frakte, (to) transport

innføre, (to) import  
 varer (c. pl.), goods

fabrikkvarer, manufactured goods  
 derfra, from there  
 kull, coal  
 manufakturvarer(r) (c.), textile(s)  
 sydfрукter, Southern fruits; tropical fruits  
 Frankrike, France  
 Spania, Spain  
 Italia, Italy  
 utfører, exports  
 trelast, timber  
 cellulose, cellulose  
 kjemiske produkter, chemical products  
 fisk, fish  
 fiskehermetikk, canned fish  
 eksportartikler, export articles  
 utviklet seg, developed  
 raskt, quickly; speedily  
 sysselsetter, employs  
 foss(ene) (c.), (the) waterfall(s)  
 utbygd, harnessed  
 strøm (c.), current  
 elektrisk strøm går gjennom, electricity is carried by  
 kraftledning(er) (c.), power cable(s)

handelsflåte (c.), merchant fleet  
 verden, world  
 fraktfart, charter trade  
 går i fraktfart, are in the charter trade;  
 carry freight  
 havner, ports  
 sjøfarts, shipping  
 handelsbyer, commercial towns

#### Annen del FORRETNINGSSAMTALE

forretningssamtale (c.), business conversation  
 til stede, present  
 melde, (to) announce  
 levere, (to) deliver; present  
 hva var det De ønsket?, what can I do for you? (lit. what was it you wanted?)  
 representere, represent  
 aksjeselskap(et) (n.), (the) limited company  
 anta, take it that; suppose; presume  
 et par ganger, a couple of times  
 forbindelse (c.), connection  
 firma (n.), firm  
 driver, carry on; conduct  
 import (c.), import  
 eksport (c.), export  
 vegne, behalf  
 på firmaets vegne, on behalf of the firm  
 få komme med, put forward  
 forslag (n.), suggestion; proposition  
 samarbeid (n.), co-operation

bransje (c.), branch  
 allslags, all sorts of; all types of  
 leilighetsvis, occasionally  
 salpeter, saltpetre  
 hermetikk, canned goods  
 formidle, (to) handle  
 betingelse(r) (c.), condition(s)  
 hva det angår, as far as that is concerned  
 (å angå, to concern)  
 bli enige, agree  
 transportomkostning(er) (c.), transport cost(s)  
 forsikring (c.), insurance  
 forsøk (n.), attempt; trial  
 såpass, so; sufficient  
 affære (c.), affair  
 jeg synes det er en såpass stor affære,  
 I think it is an affair sufficiently big  
 kompanjong (c.), partner  
 har De noe imot, do you mind? (lit. have you anything against?)  
 med en gang, at once

### Leksjon 47

#### Første del LEGE, TANNLEGE OG APOTEK

førtisju, forty-seven  
 førtisjuende, forty-seventh  
 lege (c.), doctor  
 tannlege (c.), dentist  
 apotek (n.), chemist's (shop)  
 tannverk (c.), toothache  
 galt, wrong  
 plomberes, be filled  
 dersom det ikke går an, if it is not possible  
 fylle, (to) fill; stop  
 trekke, (to) pull

tunge(n) (c.), (the) tongue  
 bryst(et) (n.), (the) chest; (the) breast  
 grundig, thoroughly  
 konstatere, (to) ascertain; decide  
 feiler, is the matter

bevilling (c.), licence  
 utdannede, qualified  
 apoteker(e) (c.), chemist(s)  
 handel (c.), trade  
 legemidler (n. pl.), medical supplies; medicines  
 resept (c.), prescription  
 doktor(en) (c.), (the) doctor  
 lager, makes; mixes  
 medisin(en) (c.), (the) medicine  
 frie apotekervarer, patent medicines  
 pulver (n.), powder(s)  
 pille(r) (c.), pill(s)  
 salve(r) (c.), ointment(s)  
 plaster (n.), plaster  
 toalettaker, toilet articles  
 parfymeri (n.), perfumery

f. eks. (=for eksempel), for example  
barberblad (n.), razor blade  
barbersåpe (c.), shaving soap  
barberkost (c.), shaving brush  
neglebørste(r) (c.), nailbrush(es)  
tannpasta, tooth-paste

## Annen del HOS LEGEN

konsul (c.), consul  
hva er det som er i veien, what is wrong, what is the matter  
jeg tror jeg feiler alt mulig, I think everything is wrong  
søvnløs, sleepless  
vondt, painful  
rygg(en) (c.), (the) back  
vondt i ryggen har jeg, I have a painful back  
fordøyelse (c.), digestion  
dårlig fordøyelse, indigestion  
kronisk, chronic  
hodepine (c.), headache  
jeg er forkjølet, I have a cold  
topp(en) (c.), (the) top  
på toppen av det hele, on top of it all; to crown it all  
nylig, recently  
utsatt for, involved in; exposed to  
ulykke (c.), accident  
skadet, damaged  
ben(et) (n.), (the) leg  
kne(ét) (n.), (the) knee  
brakk, broke  
(å brenne, to break)  
nakke(n) (c.), (the) neck  
så ille som det høres, as bad as it sounds  
blodtrykk(et) (n.), (the) blood pressure  
hjerter(t) (n.), (the) heart  
lunge(ne) (c.), (the) lung(s)  
ser ut til å være, seems to be

## Leksjon 48

### Første del TEATRET

førtiåtte, forty-eight  
førtiåttende, forty-eighth  
stort sett, on the whole; generally speaking

kosmetikk, cosmetics  
sminke (c.), rouge  
leppestift (c.), lipstick  
pudder (n.), face powder  
parfyme (c.), perfume

får jeg se på, let me have a look at  
pust(en) (c.), (the) breath  
dypt, deep  
trekk pusten dypt, take a deep breath  
alvorlig, serious  
overanstrengt, overworked  
resultere, (to) result  
nervesammenbrudd (n.), nervous breakdown  
forsiktig, careful  
blir De kanskje nødt til, you may have to  
sykehus (n.), hospital  
legge Dem inn på sykehus, go into hospital  
(å ligge på sykehus, to be in hospital)  
rå(de), (to) advise  
rolig, easy; quiet  
regelmessig, regular  
vesentlig, mainly; mostly; chiefly  
fet, fat; greasy  
holde opp, (to) stop  
røke, (to) smoke  
i det minste, at least  
ordinere, (to) prescribe  
styrkemiddel (n.), tonic  
forskrift(er) (c.), direction(s)  
love, (to) promise

pasient(en) (c.), (the) patient  
stetoskop (n.), stethoscope  
manometer (n.), manometer

konserterlokale(r) (n.), concert hall(s)  
i sentrum, in the centre (of the town)  
farse(r) (c.), farce  
revy(er) (c.), revue(s)

komedier (c. pl.), comedies  
(komedie, comedy)  
tragedier (c. pl.), tragedies  
(tragedie, tragedy)  
opera (c.), opera  
operette(r) (c.), operetta(s); musical comedy  
spilles, are performed  
stykke(r) (n.), play(s); (lit. pieces)  
spilles stykker på nynorsk, plays in New Norwegian are performed  
hele året rundt, all the year round  
teaterforestilling(ene) (c.), (the) theatre performance(s)

de beste plassene, the best seats  
orkesterplass, orchestra stalls  
parkett, stalls  
rad, row  
balkong, balcony; dress circle  
mindre gode, not so good; less good  
parterre, back stalls

## Annen del I TEATRET

benk (c.), row  
utsolgt, sold out  
ergerlig, annoying; aggravating  
det var ergerlig, that is annoying; that is a nuisance  
men parkett kan vi vel få, but what about the stalls  
midt på, in the middle  
garderobemerke(t) (n.), (the) cloak-room ticket

annen rad, upper circle  
galleri, gallery  
losje(ne) (c.), (the) box(es)  
forestilling(er) (c.), performance(s)  
nivå (n.), level; standard  
spilt, played; performed; acted  
kjente, well known  
skuespiller(e) (c.), actor(s)  
skuespillerinne(r) (c.), actress(es)  
klassiker (c.), classic  
forfatter (c.), author; writer  
oppsetning(en) (c.), (the) setting  
sceneri, scenery  
kostyme(r) (n.), costume(s)  
tradisjonelle, traditional  
karakter (c.), character  
forteppe(ne) (n.), (the) curtain(s)

pr. telefon, by telephone  
garderobe(n) (c.), (the) cloak-room  
pause(n) (c.), (the) interval  
foajé(en) (c.), (the) foyer

billettene takk, tickets please  
program (n.), programme  
storartet, grand  
jeg moret meg storartet, I thoroughly enjoyed myself; I had a grand time  
(å more seg, to enjoy oneself)  
sjelden, seldom; rarely  
ledd, laughed  
(å le, to laugh)  
strålende, splendid

## Leksjon 49 NORSK LITTERATUR

førtini, forty-nine  
förtiniende, forty-ninth  
litteratur (c.), literature  
eldste, oldest  
norrøne, nordic  
skaldevad (n.), skaldic poems  
eddadikt (n.), Eddaic poems  
saga(er) (c.), saga(s); (prose tales)  
de aller fleste, most of them  
islandske, Icelandic

er blitt til, originate  
usikkert, uncertain  
sannsynlig, probable  
opprinnelse (c.), origin  
de øvrige, the others; the rest  
ættesaga, family saga  
kongesaga, king's saga  
skrevet, written  
(å skrive, to write)  
islendinger, Icelanders



største, greatest  
forteller, tells  
(å fortelle, to tell)  
forhold (n.), condition(s)  
reformasjonen, the Reformation  
dansk, Danish  
skriftspråk (n.), written language  
på dansk skriftspråk, written in Danish  
nordmann, Norwegian  
levde, lived; spent  
oppføres stadig, are constantly being performed  
(å oppføre, to perform; stage)  
scene (c.), stage  
på norske og danske scener, in Norwegian and Danish theatres

begynnelse(n) (c.), (the) beginning  
selvstendig, independent  
nasjonallitteratur (c.), national literature

i spissen, in the forefront  
siste halvpert, the latter half  
hundreår(et) (n.), (the) century  
gullalder(en) (c.), (the) golden age  
åndsliv (n.), intellectual life  
realisme(n) (c.), (the) realism  
problem(diktning(en) (c.), (the) problem writing

preger, marks  
generasjon (c.), generation  
dramatiker (c.), dramatist  
verk (n.), works  
Et Dukkehjem, A Doll's House  
Gengangere, Ghosts  
Vildanden, The Wild Duck

## Leksjon 50 SØFUGLEN

søfugl(en) (c.), (the) sea bird  
vildand (c.), wild duck  
svømmer, swims  
stille, silently  
ø(ens) (c.), (the) island('s)  
høie kyst, steep shore  
klare, clear  
bølger (c. pl.), waves  
rene, clean  
jæger (c.), hunter  
bøier sig, bends down

tilhører, belongs to  
verdenslitteraturen, the literature of the world  
bondefortellinger, country tales  
historiske, historical  
skuespill (n.), play  
nutidsdramaer, contemporary drama  
nasjonalsang, national song (anthem)  
Ja, vi elsker dette landet, Yes, we love this country  
dikt (n.), poem  
sang(er) (c.), song(s)  
folkeie, property of the people  
er blitt folkeie, have become loved by everybody  
romanforfatter(e) (c.), novelist(s)  
grunn (c.), ground; foundation  
la grunnen til, laid the foundation for  
diktning (c.), writing; literature  
landsmål, New Norwegian  
nynorsk, New Norwegian

hans ungdomsverk, works from his youth  
kan nevnes, one can mention  
(å nevne, to mention)  
Markens Grøde, Growth of the Soil  
Nobelprisen, the Nobel Prize  
utmerkelse (c.), distinction  
vant, won  
(å vinne, to win)  
middelalderroman (c.), novel of the Middle Ages  
representant(er) (c.), representative(s)  
klassisk, classic  
lyrikk, poetry

i den steile ur, on the rockstrewn slope  
skyder, shoots  
for løier, for fun  
smukke, beautiful  
kreatur (n.), creature  
ei, not  
drage, go; pull itself to  
lune, cosy  
skjød (n.), lap  
klage, complain  
smerte (c.), pain

taus, silently; silent  
dukker, dives  
dybt, deep  
mørke, dark  
kold, cold  
lukker, closes  
sletter ud, smooths out  
spor (n.), trace  
i søens dybe grunde, in the depths of the sea

groer, grows  
tang(en) (c.), (the) seaweed  
bred, wide  
frisk, healthy  
derunder, under there  
blunde, sleep  
boer, lives  
stumme, dumb

## FORVIKLINGER

forvikling(er) (c.), complication(s)  
have (c.), garden  
æbletræ (n.), apple tree  
dryssende fuldt, over-full  
af, of  
blomster-sne, blossom snow  
vimsed, bustled  
(vimse, bustle)  
liden, small; little  
bi (c.), bee  
æbleblomst (c.), apple blossom  
forelsked sig i, fell in love with  
misted, lost  
(miste, lose)  
hjerterø (c.), peace of heart  
forloved de sig, they got engaged  
fløj, flew  
(flyve, fly)  
vidt, far  
sommerfart (c.), summer travel  
da hjem han vendte, when home he returned  
var blomsten kart, the blossom had set  
sørged, grieved  
kart(en) (c.), (the) unripe apple  
led, suffered  
(lide, suffer)  
men det var nu intet at gøre ved, but there was now nothing to be done  
tæt, close  
træ(er) (n.), (the) tree  
mur(ens) (c.), (the) wall('s)  
grus, gravel  
leved, lived  
(leve, live)  
fattig, poor  
dydig, virtuous  
mus (c.), mouse

løn, secret  
sukked, sighed  
(sukke, sigh)  
du kart så fin, you apple so beautiful  
kælder (c.), cellar  
himlen, heaven  
trofaste, faithful  
atter, again  
flugt (c.), flight  
var karten frugt, the apple was ripe  
tagskægg(er) (n.), (the) eaves  
hang, hung  
(henge, hang)  
kurv (c.), basket  
fuglerede (n.), bird's nest  
bode, lived  
(bo, live)  
spurv (c.), sparrow  
rede (n.), nest  
kæmped, struggled  
stred, toiled; strove  
(stride, toil)  
stilt, quietly; quiet  
der fik ingen besked, nobody knew about it  
ting (c.), thing  
trilled, rolled; dropped  
gren(en) (c.), (the) branch  
sprak, burst  
(sprekke, burst)  
faldt, fell  
(falde, fall)  
død, dead  
halvkvalt, half choked  
ak!, oh!  
ligervis, likewise  
skjul (n.), hiding place  
lå, lay

kornstang(en) (c.), pole with sheaf of  
corn on top for the birds at Christ-  
mas  
rejstes, was erected; put up  
jul, Christmas  
fri, free  
nøgen, naked  
hæk (c.), hedge  
var væk, had gone  
kub(e)n (c.), (the) hive  
fred, peace

omsider, eventually  
voksfabrikant (c.), waxproducer  
jammer, misery  
nød, distress; suffering  
var spart, could have been saved  
var bien bleven mus, if the bee had be-  
come a mouse  
da blomsten blev kart, when the blossom  
set  
smukt, beautiful

## THE NORWEGIAN LANGUAGE

The Norwegian language belongs to the Scandinavian group of Teutonic languages. During the Viking Age (800-1050), the Scandinavian languages underwent vital changes, the three different languages—Swedish, Danish and Norwegian—appeared, in addition to Icelandic.

It was in the Middle Ages that the Sagas, the most valuable of Norwegian-Icelandic literature, were written. From the end of the fourteenth century, however, Norway was united with Denmark for four centuries, which resulted in the decline of the Norwegian language and literature, with Danish becoming more and more the official language. When Norwegian authors again began to write in the latter part of the seventeenth century, their language was practically Danish. The Norwegian tongue remained only in the dialects of the rural population.

But some time after the political separation from Denmark in 1814, there was an obvious move towards bringing the official language closer to the living dialects and the spoken language, and this tendency made itself felt most of all in the vocabulary and syntax.

By the end of the nineteenth century, there had developed a Dano-Norwegian language used by most authors (Ibsen, for instance), and generally called *Riksmål*, while the spoken language was far more purely Norwegian than the one used in writing.

However, about the middle of the nineteenth century there began a movement to build up a genuine Norwegian language based on the rural dialects (the *Landsmål* or *Nynorsk* as it is now officially called). This movement found many adherents, who became champions of a single national language based upon the rural dialects, especially those of Western Norway.

A consequence of this was the introduction of several spelling reforms of the *Riksmål*, each of which tended towards bridging the gap between the written and the spoken language. The reform of 1938, supplemented by adjustments made in 1959, brings the two official languages closer to one another and may eventually lead to a single national language, as it was a reform of both spelling and grammar.

The spelling is still not phonetic, but it is phonetic to a greater extent than it was only a few years ago. When you read texts by authors of the 19th century, or even the first half of the 20th century, you must therefore be prepared to find an orthography that to some extent differs from that used in this Course.

Norwegian is not pronounced in the same way by all Norwegians. As the dialects still have a strong foothold in Norway, the pronunciation is often influenced by the dialect-background of the speaker, as well as by his social background and his education. These differences may manifest themselves in the pronunciation of individual sounds or sound combinations or, just as often, in the intonation of the words and the speech melody. The type of Norwegian chosen for this Course is the standard pronunciation of *Riksmål* (or *Bokmål*, as it is now officially called) in the eastern parts of the country, especially in and around Oslo.

The best, and probably only, way to learn to pronounce a foreign language is to listen to native speakers or to recordings of their speech, and then try to imitate them. Nevertheless some general remarks may be useful for the student and these are given in the following pages.

## NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION

### STRESS AND LENGTH

Many Norwegian words are stressed on the first syllable, but there is no absolute rule, and the only way to learn to stress correctly is by practice. In this connection the recordings will be found invaluable.

In Norwegian the stress is expiratory, i.e. the stressed vowel sounds louder and stronger than the unstressed ones. In the Eastern parts of Norway the stressed syllable is normally pronounced on a lower pitch than the following unstressed ones. The result is that a series of affirmative sentences in Norwegian very often sounds to a foreigner like a series of as many questions.

A stressed vowel which is not followed in the same word by a consonant, is always long. In phonetic transcription the long character of a vowel is indicated by the symbol[:]. We have e.g.

vi [vi:], we	lo [lo:], laughed
le [le:], laugh	du [du:], you (familiar form)
ha [ha:], have	by [by:], town
gå [gɔ:], go	dø [dø:], die

If the vowel is followed by one or more consonants, it may be long or short. If it is long, the following consonant is short; if it is short, the following consonant is long.

In Norwegian spelling the fact that a consonant is long is often indicated by writing it twice. In the phonetic transcription also we have indicated the long nature of a consonant by doubling it. The effect is the same in English where the consonant at the end of one word and the beginning of the next is the same, as in "good dog" and "hot tea".

We have thus to distinguish carefully between

hat [hat], hatred, and hatt [hatt], hat  
vin [vin], wine, and vind [vinn], wind  
været [væ:rə], the weather, and verre [værrə], worse  
and so on.

The long vowels are closer than the corresponding short ones, as one can hear by listening carefully to the words on the Sounds Recording; e.g.

lest [lest], read (participle), in (3), as against  
hest [hesst], horse, in (4) with a short vowel considerably more open, i.e. between [e] and [ɛ];  
sot [sɔ:t], sweet, in (15) as against  
sott [sɔtt], sweetly, in (16), with an open sound, often transcribed [ɔ].

It should also be noted that the symbols [ɔ:], [o:], and [u:] do not have exactly the same value as when used to transcribe words of English or of continental languages. They indicate long vowels considerably closer than the corresponding sounds in these other languages. Thus, Norwegian [o:] sounds to a foreign ear very much like [u:] as in English *too* [tu:], and the sound [u:] is often confused with [y:].

In the diphthongs, the first component is relatively short, the second relatively long. The pronunciation of the diphthongs **ei** and **au** varies considerably from individual to individual. Pronunciations as [æi] for [ei], and [əu], [ou] for [æu] are often heard.

## ASSIMILATION OF SOUNDS AND OTHER IRREGULARITIES

Final **t** is always dropped when it is the definite article of neuter nouns in the singular: e.g. **huset**. In lesson 1 you will find three more examples of this: **bordet**, **vinduet**, **værelset**.

**D** is also dropped in a great many cases: e.g. **god**, **glad**, **bord**, **hånd**, **vond**, **synd**, **land**, **tidlig**, **godt**, **hendene**, **binde**.

The vowel **e** is reduced in an unstressed position, and sometimes left out altogether: e.g. **bite**, **fille**, **dette**, **mannen**, **sabel**, **hendene**, **vennene**.

The consonant **r** is, in the Norwegian of Oslo as used in the Course, a trilled **r**, pronounced with the tip of the tongue. The trill is not very strong, consisting of rarely more than 2-3 vibrations, and in certain positions is often reduced to a single flap, e.g. between vowels and in the end of a word. A final **r** may even disappear completely without leaving any trace before a word beginning with a consonant other than those mentioned in the next section; e.g. **det var pent** [de: va: peɪt], it was nice.

The pronunciation of the consonant clusters **rt**, **rd**, **rn**, **rl** and **rs** is likely to cause some difficulty in the beginning. In these clusters the two consonants are pronounced separately only in very careful or emphatic pronunciation or in certain words. In Eastern Norway the two consonants merge in ordinary speech, i.e. the **r** disappears, though it leaves its trace in the pronunciation of the second remaining consonant, which is now pronounced with the tip of the tongue raised towards the alveolar ridge. These secondary consonants are called alveolar, and are usually transcribed [t], [d], [ɲ], [l], [ʃ]. The last sound [ʃ] is, however, in most cases, assimilated to [f]. Before [ɲ] the vowel is always lengthened. On the sounds record we have the following instances of these alveolar sounds: **jern** [jæ:ɲ], iron; **tjern** [tʃæ:ɲ], small lake; **stjerne** [stjæ:ɲə] (less common [stjærɲə]), star; **barn** [ba:ɲ], child; **vært** [væ:tt], been; **part** [pa:tt], part; **bort** [bo:tt], away; **lurt** [lu:tt], cunningly; **hjerter** [jæ:ttə] (less common [jærɲə]), heart; **først** [fø:ft], first.

One might add **kors** [kɔ:ft], cross; **ferdig** [fæ:di] or [fæddi], ready; **hverdag** [væ:da:g], weekday (but **verdig** [væ:rdi], worthy).

It is important to note that these alveolars appear even when **r** and the following consonant belong to separate words, e.g. **vær så snill**! [væ:ʃɔ: snill], instead of [væ:r sɔ: snill], please! (lit. be so kind); **vi var ni** [vi: va: ɲi:], we were nine; **han sier takk** [hann si:ə ʃakk], he says thank you; **han er dum** [hann æ: dɔmm], he is stupid; **det er lett** [de: æ: ʃett], it is easy.

Assimilation may also occur where there is a neutral vowel between the **r** and **s**. An instance of this occurs in lesson 26 where in one case the speaker pronounces **Deres** as [de:ʃf].

Of other irregularities, note that **sj**, **sk**, **skj**, **g** and **j** represent one and the same sound in the words **sjø**, **skytte**, **skjære**, **geni**, **journal**. Similarly, that **k**, **kj**, **tj** and **kkj** in **kyss**, **kjøre**, **tjern**, **bikkje** also represent one sound only. Note also that **h** is mute before **v**: **hva**, **hvor**; and that the final **g** in **ig**, **lig** is not pronounced: e.g. **nødvendig**.

## TONES

A special phonetic characteristic of Norwegian (as of Swedish) is the existence of two different word-tones: sequences of one stressed and one unstressed syllable may be pronounced with two different pitch modulations. You should therefore listen carefully not only to the pronunciation of each word, but also to the way in which the voice moves up and down. There are examples of both tones in the Sounds Recording, apart, of course, from those on the recordings of the lessons.

Tone I, indicated in the phonetic transcription to the recorded Sounds by ' before the stressed syllable, makes use of a low pitch on the stressed syllable, and a higher pitch on the following unstressed syllable. If there are two or more unstressed syllables, they are pronounced on a rising scale, except at the end of an enumeration or of a sentence, where the unstressed syllables are normally pronounced on a low pitch: e.g. 'oppleve (section 4 of Sounds), 'huset, 'mannen, 'sabel, 'hendene (section 17).

Tone II is indicated in the phonetic transcription to the Sounds Recording by ^ before the stressed syllable. The characteristic feature of Tone II is a fall on the stressed syllable, the following unstressed syllable being pronounced on a high pitch, except at the end of an enumeration or of a sentence, where there is normally a fall. If there are two or more unstressed syllables, they are pronounced on a rising scale in the same way as for Tone I. Examples on the Sounds Recording are: ^bite, ^tidlig (section 1), ^fille (section 2), ^leve (section 3).



## THE SOUNDS RECORDING

### I

#### ALFABETET (The Alphabet)

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
a:	be:	se:	de:	e:	eff	ge:	hø:	i:	jødd
K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T
kø:	ell	emm	enn	o:	pe:	ku:	ærr	ess	te:
U	V	W	X	Y	Z	Æ	Ø	Å	
u:	ve:	døbbeltve:	ekks	y:	sett	æ:	ø:	å:	

## DE NORSKE SPRÅKLYD

### (The Norwegian Sounds)

#### VOKALENE (The Vowels)

1.	i	vi	bite	tid	tidlig
	i:	vi:	ˈbi:tə	ti:d	ˈti:li
2.	i	fisk	filie	mitt	
	i	fissk	ˈfillə	mitt	
3.	e	le	leve	lest	det
	e:	le:	ˈle:və	le:st	de:
4.	e	delikat	oppleve	den	hest
	e	deli'ka:t	ˈopple(:)və	denn	hesst
		dette	vekk		
		ˈdetta	vekk		
5.	er, ær	her	klær	jern	være
	ærr, æ:r	hær	klær	jærŋ	ˈvære
		sterk	herje	vært	
		stærk	ˈhærrjə	vætt	
6.	a	ha	hav	hat	hard
	a, a:	ha:	ha:v	ha:t	ha:r
		han			hann
		kant	part		
		kannt	part		

7.	å, o	gå	låst	fore	sove	tog
	o:	gø:	lø:st	ˈfø:rə	ˈso:və	tø:g
8.	å, o	gått	hånd	godt		
	o	gøtt	hønn	gøtt		
9.	o	lo	god	rost	bord	
	o:	lø:	gø:	ro:st	bø:r	
10.	o, u	bort	rom	vond	bukk	tung
	o	bøtt	romm	vonn	bokk	tong
11.	u	hus	ut	lur	lurt	
	u:	hu:s	u:t	lu:r	lu:t	
12.	u	hund	hull	huske		
	u	hunn	hull	ˈhusskə		
13.	y	by	tyv	lys	lyst (light)	
	y:	by:	ty:v	ly:s	ly:st	
14.	y	rygg	synd	lyst (pleasure)		
	y	rygg	synn	lysst		
15.	ø	søt	søkt	dø	dør	høre
	ø:	sø:t	sø:kt	dø:	dø:r	ˈhø:rə
16.	ø, y	søtt	søm	syttten	sytti	nødvendig
	ø	søtt	sømm	ˈsøtn	ˈsøtti	nød'venni
	ør	før	mørk	tør	først	
	ørr	førr	mørk	tørr	føfft	
17.	e	kaste	kaster	huset	mannen	
	ə	ˈkasstə	ˈkastər	ˈhu:se	ˈmannen	
		sabel	hendene	vennene		
		ˈsa:bəl	ˈhennənə	ˈvennənə		

### II

#### DIFTONGENE (The Diphthongs)

18.	ei	lei	stein	segl	seksten
	ei	lei	stein	seil	ˈseistən
		regn	vegne		
		rein	ˈveinə		

19.	ai ai	kai kai	vaie ˈvaie	svaie ˈsvaie		
20.	au æu	sau sæu	saus sæus	hauk hæuk	naust næust	
21.	oi oi	joike ˈjoike	koie ˈkoie			
22.	ui ui	huie ˈhuie				
23.	øy øy	høy høy	støye ˈstøye	tøys tøys	røyk røyk	døgn døyn

## KONSONANTER OG VOKALER I GRUPPER

(Consonants and vowels in groups)

24.	pakke ˈpakke	tap ta:p	absolutt apsoˈlutt	stoppe ˈstoppə		
25.	båt bo:t	klebe ˈkle:bə	tabbe ˈtabbə	labb labb		
26.	to to:	tre tre:	bite ˈbi:tə	hest hesst	sitte ˈsittə	
	midt mitt	tjene ˈtjene				
27.	du du:	lide ˈlide	synder ˈsynndər	nådde ˈnødde		
28.	kalv kallv	kråke ˈkrø:kə	rykte ˈrykkte	styggt ˈstykkt	stikke ˈstikkə	kne kne:
29.	god go:	greie ˈgreie	dverg dverrg	skog sko:g	ligge ˈligge	gni gni:
30.	fin fin	frisk frissk	løfte ˈløfte	til havs til haffs	groft groffit	
	straff straff	gaffel ˈgaffəl				

31.	være ˈvære	vrang vragg	hav ha:v	skrive ˈskrive	whisky ˈvisski	
	hva va:	hvor vorr				
32.	sot so:t	stå sto:	hus hu:s	reise ˈreise	lass lass	kasse ˈkasso
	Oslo ˈosslo					
33.	sjo fø:	skyte ˈfy:te	skjære ˈfæ:rə	geni feˈni:	journal furrˈna:l	
34.	kyss gyss	kjøre ˈçø:rə	tjern çæ:n	tjue ˈçu:ə	bikkje ˈbiççə	
35.	ja ja:	lilje ˈlilljə	gjest jesst	geit jeit	hjerne ˈjættə	
	stjerne ˈstjæ:nə	stjele ˈstje:le				
36.	hus hu:s	aha aha:	Jotunheimen ˈjo:tunheimən			
37.	ro ro:	fram framm	far far	lære ˈlære	arr arr	større ˈstørrə
	bort bo:t	barn ba:n	virke ˈvirrkə	sterk stærk		
38.	le le:	glad gla:	alt allt	alle ˈallə		
39.	mor mo:r	alm allm	hjem jemm	lam lamm	komme ˈkømmə	
40.	nei nei	grine ˈgri:nə	hans hanns			
41.	inne ˈinnə	land lann	binde ˈbinnə			
42.	lang lang	tunge ˈtoŋgə	senke ˈseŋgə	vogn voŋgn	ligne ˈliŋgnə	

# VOCABULARY TO THE SOUNDS RECORDING

## I

vi, we  
bite, to bite  
tid, time  
tidlig, early  
fisk, fish  
fille, rag  
mitt, mine, my  
le, to laugh  
leve, to live  
lest, read  
det, it; that  
delikat, delicious  
oppleve, to experience  
den, it; that  
hest, horse  
dette, this  
vekk, away  
her, here  
klær, clothes  
jern, iron  
være, to be  
sterk, strong  
herje, to ravage; to devastate  
vært, been  
ha, to have  
hav, ocean; sea  
hat, hate  
hard, hard  
han, he  
kant, edge; border  
part, part; share  
gå, to go  
låst, locked  
fore, before; in front  
sove, to sleep  
tog, train  
gått, gone  
hånd, hand  
godt, good; nice  
lo, laughed  
god, good; nice

rost, praised  
bord, table  
bort, away  
rom, room  
vond, bad  
bukkk, bow; ram  
tung, heavy  
hus, house  
ut, out  
lur, nap; cunning  
lurt, cunning; crafty  
hund, dog  
hull, hole  
huske, swing; to remember  
by, town; to offer  
tyv, thief  
lys, light  
lyst, light  
rygg, back  
synd, sin; pity  
lyst, pleasure; delight  
søt, sweet  
søkt, searched  
dø, to die  
dør, door; die(s)  
høre, to hear  
søtt, sweet  
søm, seam  
syttien, seventeen  
sytti, seventy  
nødvendig, necessary  
førr, shortened form of førti  
mørk, dark  
tørr, dry  
først, first  
kaste, to throw  
kaster, throw(s)  
huset, the house  
mannen, the man  
sabel, sword  
hendene, the hands  
vennene, the friends

## II

lei, fed up; sorry  
stein, stone  
segl, seal  
seksten, sixteen  
regn, rain  
vegne, behalf  
kai, quay  
vaie, wave; fly  
svaie, swing  
sau, sheep

saus, sauce  
hauk, hawk  
naust, boat-house  
joike, to sing (ref. to Lapps)  
koie, small timber hut  
huie, shout  
høy, hay; tall  
støye, to make a noise  
tøys, nonsense  
røyk, smoke

døgn, day and night; 24 hours  
pakke, parcel; to pack  
tap, loss  
absolutt, absolutely  
støppe, to stop; to darn  
båt, boat  
klebe, to stick  
tabbe, blunder  
labbe, paw  
to, two  
tre, three  
bite, to bite  
hest, horse  
sitte, to sit  
midt, in the middle  
tjene, to earn; to serve  
du, you  
lide, to suffer  
synder, sinner; sins  
nådde, reached  
kalv, calf  
kråke, crow  
rykte, rumour  
stygt, ugly  
stikke, to sting; to prick  
kne, knee  
god, good; nice  
greie, to manage; to comb  
dverg, dwarf  
skog, wood; forest  
ligge, to lie  
gni, to rub  
fin, fine  
frisk, fresh; healthy  
løfte, promise; to lift  
til havs, to sea  
grøft, ditch  
straff, punishment  
gaffel, fork  
være, to be  
vrang, awkward  
hav, ocean; sea  
skrive, to write  
whisky, whisky  
hva, what  
hvor, where  
søt, sweet  
stå, to stand  
hus, house  
reise, to travel  
lass, load  
kasse, case; box

Oslo, Oslo  
sjø, sea  
skyte, to shoot  
skjære, magpie; to cut  
geni, genius  
journal, journal  
kyss, kiss  
kjøre, to drive  
tjern, small lake  
tjue, twenty  
bikkje, dog  
ja, yes  
lilje, lily  
gjest, guest  
geit, goat  
hjerter, heart  
stjerne, star  
stjele, to steal  
hus, house  
aha, aha  
Jotunheimen, Jotunheimen  
ro, quiet; to row  
fram, forward  
far, father  
lære, to teach; to learn  
arr, scar  
større, bigger  
bort, away  
barn, child  
virke, to act; to take effect  
sterk, strong  
le, to laugh  
glad, glad  
alt, everything; all  
alle, all  
mor, mother  
alm, elm  
hjem, home  
lam, lamb; lame  
komme, to come  
nei, no  
grine, to cry; to be cross  
hans, his  
inne, in; inside  
land, land; country  
binde, to tie  
lang, long  
tunge, tongue  
senke, to lower  
vogn, carriage  
ligne, to resemble

## IMPORTANT

We would stress the advisability of not stopping in the middle of reading a note to try to understand the point at issue. Work as follows: read through the whole explanation to get a general idea of the sense, but do not worry if it is not quite clear to you at first. GO ON TO THE EXAMPLES, AND, HAVING STUDIED THEM CAREFULLY, GO BACK AND READ THE EXPLANATION AGAIN. You will usually find that the examples have made all the difference to your comprehension of the rule.

## TEN POINTS TO NOTE

These preliminary notes are meant as a brief introduction to Norwegian grammar and are not to be considered as exhaustive.

1. **GENDER.** Norwegian has three genders: common gender, feminine gender and neuter gender. The main way of indicating the gender of a noun is by means of the article. You should therefore make a point of learning nouns *with* their appropriate article, e.g. not **gutt**, boy, but **en gutt**, a boy; not **hus**, house, but **et hus**, a house. For the feminine gender, see §2 below.

2. **THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.** The indefinite article is a separate word, placed before the noun like the English "a", "an". The two main forms are:

**en** (common gender): **en stol**, a chair  
**en gutt**, a boy  
**en pike**, a girl  
**et** (neuter gender): **et hus**, a house

In educated Norwegian **riksmål**, which is the form used by the speakers on the records, the feminine gender is only used to a limited extent:

**ei** (feminine gender): **ei gate**, a street  
**ei bok**, a book

For all feminine nouns, the common gender article **en** can be used instead of **ei**: **en gate**, **en bok**.

3. **THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.** The definite article of the noun in Norwegian is added to the noun as a suffix:

<b>-en, -n</b> (common gender):	<b>gutt</b> , boy	<b>gutten</b> , the boy
	<b>lampe</b> , lamp	<b>lampen</b> , the lamp
<b>-a</b> (feminine gender):	<b>bok</b> , book	<b>boka</b> , the book
	<b>gate</b> , street	<b>gata</b> , the street
<b>-et, -t</b> (neuter gender):	<b>hus</b> , house	<b>huset</b> , the house
	<b>eple</b> , apple	<b>eplet</b> , the apple

Most feminine nouns in the singular can take the article **-en, -n**: **boken**, the book; **gaten**, the street. In the plural, the definite article is the same for common gender, feminine and neuter nouns:

<b>-ene, -ne</b> :	<b>stoler</b> , chairs	<b>stolene</b> , the chairs
	<b>gutter</b> , boys	<b>guttene</b> , the boys
	<b>piker</b> , girls	<b>pikene</b> , the girls
	<b>gater</b> , streets	<b>gatene</b> , the streets
	<b>hus</b> , houses	<b>husene</b> , the houses



4. PLURAL OF NOUNS. The indefinite plural of nouns usually ends in -er, or -r if the word ends in an unstressed vowel:

en stol, a chair	stoler, chairs
en gutt, a boy	gutter, boys
en (or ei) pike, a girl	piker, girls
en (or ei) elv, a river	elver, rivers
et vindu, a window	vinduer, windows
et eple, an apple	epler, apples

Exception: Neuter nouns of one syllable are usually the same in the indefinite plural as in the singular:

et hus, a house	hus, houses
-----------------	-------------

5. ADJECTIVES. Unlike English, adjectives in Norwegian agree with the nouns they qualify, and vary according to number and gender. The system is, however, not very complicated, as there are only three forms.

In the indefinite declension, the common gender form is the same as the one given in dictionaries. The neuter form normally adds the ending -t, and the plural form the ending -e:

en varm sommer, a warm summer
et varmt bad, a warm bath
varme dager, warm days

There is also a definite declension, where the form ending in -e is used for all genders, singular and plural. In most cases, the adjective is then preceded by the definite article of the adjective, so that there are in fact *two* definite articles, that of the adjective, and the suffixed article of the noun:

den varme sommeren, the hot summer
det varme badet, the warm bath
de varme dagene, the warm days

6. INFINITIVES OF VERBS. The infinitive is indicated in English by the particle "to" which corresponds to Norwegian *å*: to like, *å* like. The infinitive of the great majority of verbs in Norwegian ends in an unstressed -e:

<i>å</i> snakke, to speak
<i>å</i> leve, to live
<i>å</i> komme, to come

If you take away this -e, what you have left is the *stem* of the verb. This stem is the part of the verb from which other forms are usually made up through the adding of endings.

In a number of verbs, the infinitive ends in a stressed vowel. In such verbs infinitive and stem coincide:

<i>å</i> bo, to dwell, to live
<i>å</i> dø, to die

7. PRESENT TENSE. The present tense in Norwegian is nearly always formed by adding -r to the infinitive. This form in -r is used for all persons, singular and plural, and renders both the simple present in English, e.g. "he speaks", and the continuous, e.g. "he is speaking":

jeg snakker, I speak, I am speaking
du, De* snakker, you speak, you are speaking
han snakker, he speaks, he is speaking
hun snakker, she speaks, she is speaking
den (det) snakker, it speaks, it is speaking
vi snakker, we speak, we are speaking
dere snakker, you speak, you are speaking
de snakker, they speak, they are speaking

There are a few important exceptions to the rule that the present tense is formed by adding -r to the infinitive:

<i>å</i> være, to be	jeg er, I am, etc.
<i>å</i> gjøre, to do	jeg gjør, I do, etc.
<i>å</i> spørre, to ask	jeg spør, I ask, etc.
<i>å</i> vite, to know	jeg vet, I know, etc.

Exceptions are also the modal auxiliaries:

jeg vil, I will, etc.	jeg bør, I ought to, etc.
jeg skal, I shall, etc.	jeg kan, I can, etc.
jeg må, I must, etc.	jeg tør, I dare, etc.

8. IMPERATIVE. The imperative is in nearly all cases the same as the stem of the verb:

Snakk til ham! Speak to him!
Lev mens du kan! Live while you can!
Spør ham! Ask him!

Notice that -rr- is reduced to -r in *spør*. Similarly, -mm- is always reduced to a single consonant in the imperative:

<i>å</i> komme, to come	kom med en gang! come at once!
<i>å</i> tømme, to empty	tøm glasset! empty the glass!

9. NEGATION. Norwegian expresses the negative by means of the adverb *ikke* added to the verb. The place of this negative adverb in the sentence, however, varies according to the type of sentence. In a main clause it follows immediately after the verb:

Jeg danser ikke, I don't dance.

In a compound tense it follows the auxiliary:

Jeg har ikke danset, I have not danced.

\*See also Innledning I, §5.

In a subordinate clause, the negative adverb normally precedes the verb:

Han sier at han ikke kan, He says that he cannot.

Jeg sa at jeg ikke hadde danset, I said that I had not danced.

10. WORD ORDER. Norwegian word order is very often like English. In §9 above we have already dealt with some of the exceptions. Another very characteristic feature is the inversion of subject and predicate where they are preceded by some other part of the sentence:

Jeg reiser i morgen, I am leaving tomorrow,

but

I morgen reiser jeg, Tomorrow I am leaving.

The only exceptions to this rule are the conjunctions:

At jeg reiser i morgen er sikkert, That I am leaving tomorrow is certain.

Notice that a subordinate clause preceding the main clause causes inversion in the latter:

At jeg reiser i morgen, vet han, That I am leaving tomorrow he knows.

Further information is given in §§71-75 of the *Appendix*.

## Innledning

### NÅ SKAL VI SNAKKE NORSK

#### Første (I) del

1. **Skal**, "shall", present tense of the auxiliary verb **å skulle**. **Skal** plus the infinitive of the main verb is used to express the future tense: **Vi skal snakke norsk**, "We shall speak Norwegian", "We are going to speak Norwegian".
2. **Nå skal vi snakke norsk**, "Now we are going to speak Norwegian". The inversion of the finite verb, **skal**, and the subject, **vi**, is caused by the adverb **nå** placed at the head of the sentence. If it had been put at the end of the sentence, there would have been no inversion: **Vi skal snakke norsk nå**.
3. **God morgen!** "Good morning!" In familiar speech you can use this greeting any time of the day. A shortened form for this greeting, **morn**, is used a great deal in colloquial Norwegian.
4. **Vær så snill**, "please" (literally, "be so kind"). **Vær** is the imperative of the verb **å være**, "to be". It is much more polite to say **vær så snill å høre etter** than to use the imperative of **å høre**: **hør etter!** "listen!"
5. **De er eleven**, "You are the pupil". **De** is the personal pronoun in the third person plural (i.e. the literal meaning is "they"), but it is used to address one person politely. This is the form you should always use, unless you are on very friendly terms with the person you are speaking to. Always use **De** in hotels, restaurants and shops, and also to any person whose acquaintance you make *en route*. Notice that **De** meaning "you" is always written with a capital D. The other personal pronoun for addressing one person in Norwegian, **du**, should be reserved for personal friends and small children. Don't let this mislead you into thinking that Norwegians are stiff and formal people. You will soon learn to appreciate the changing from **De** to **du** as a charming indication that you have been accepted as a personal friend. The expression **å være dis** means "to say **De** to one another". You do that to begin with, but most Norwegians prefer **å være dus** with their friends. The ceremony of passing from **De** to **du** usually takes place over a drink, hence the expression **å drikke dus**, "to toast the **du**-form".

(Innledning)

6. **I Norge snakker man norsk**, "In Norway they speak Norwegian". Notice the inversion of subject and predicate after **i Norge**. The indefinite pronoun **man** means "people in general", and is usually translated "one", "people", "they". It is never stressed, and is spelt with only one **n**, as distinct from the noun **en mann**, "a man".
7. **Dette er et bord**, "This is a table". **Dette** is the neuter singular of the demonstrative pronoun **denne**. When attached to a noun, the demonstrative pronoun has to agree with the noun in gender and number: **denne boken**, "this book", **dette bordet**, "this table", **disse bordene**, "these tables". But when the demonstrative pronoun is used as a pointer with the verb **å være**, the neuter singular is used both for common gender and neuter nouns, both in singular and plural: **dette er en bok**, "this is a book"; **dette er bøker**, "these are books".
8. **En bok**, "a book". This is one of a few nouns that change the vowel in the plural: **bøker**, "books".
9. **Det er en stol**, "That is a chair". **Det** is the neuter singular of the demonstrative pronoun **den**. When attached to a noun, the demonstrative has to agree with the noun in gender and number: **den boken**, "that book"; **det bordet**, "that table"; **de bøkene**, "those books". But when the demonstrative pronoun is used as a pointer with the verb **å være**, the neuter singular is used both for common gender and neuter nouns, both in singular and plural: **det er stoler**, "those are chairs".
10. **De har en bok i hånden**, "You have a book in your hand. Reference to parts of the body and to items of clothing is in English made by the possessive pronoun (in your hand). In adverbial references of this kind Norwegian uses the definite article (**i hånden**) whenever the question of ownership is unambiguous. Examples:  
**Jeg har en bok i hånden**, I have a book in my hand.  
**Han har en bok i hånden**, He has a book in his hand.  
**Han satte hatten på hodet**, He put his hat on his head.  
**Han stakk hånden i lommen**, He put his hand in his pocket.  
Norwegian uses possessive pronouns in such cases only where an unusual situation calls for specific clarification:  
**Ivar hadde tatt blyanten til Olav, og Olav stakk hånden ned i lommen hans for å få tak i den**, Ivar had taken Olav's pencil, and Olav put his (own) hand into his (Ivar's) pocket to get hold of it (the pencil).  
The noun **en hånd** changes the vowel in the plural: **hender**, "hands".
11. **Min stemme**, "my voice". The possessive pronoun agrees with the noun: **mitt bord**, "my table"; **mine bøker**, "my books". It should be noted that what are known in English as possessive adjectives ("my", "your", etc.) or possessive pronouns ("mine", "yours", etc.) are all called possessive pronouns in Norwegian and have the same form whether used adjectivally or pronominally. See Appendix, §§6-9 for further information about these possessives.

(Innledning)

12. **De lærer å forstå**, "You are learning to understand". **Å lære** usually means "to learn", but it can also mean "to teach": **jeg lærer ham norsk**, "I teach him Norwegian". The usual word for "teach" is **å undervise**. It should be noted, however, that before the subject being taught, the preposition **i** must be added: e.g.

**Jeg underviser ham i norsk**, I teach him Norwegian.

But:

**Jeg underviser bare voksne**, I teach only adults.

13. **Jeg taler**, "I speak", "I am speaking". **Å tale** is slightly less colloquial than **å snakke**, but the words are often used interchangeably.
14. **Jeg taler langsomt**, "I am speaking slowly". The neuter form of the adjective is used as an adverb: **et langsomt tog**, "a slow train"; **toget går langsomt**, "the train moves slowly".
15. **Når jeg snakker langsomt, forstår De**, "When I speak slowly, you understand". Notice inversion of the subject **De** and the verb **forstår** of the main clause caused by the subordinate clause preceding it. Notice also that there is no inversion in the subordinate clause after the conjunction **når**, "when", since conjunctions do not cause inversion.

Annen (II) del

1. **Annen del**, "second part". The ordinal numeral **annen** has in the neuter the form **annet**: **annet bind**, "second volume".
2. **God dag!** "Good day!" You can use **god dag** as a greeting any time of the day or night. In the evening, you can say **god kveld** or **god aften**, "good evening", both when you meet and when you part. **God natt**, "good night", can only be used when you part.
3. **Hvordan har De det?** "How are you?" Literally this idiomatic expression means "How have you it?" Another idiomatic expression for the same is **Hvordan står det til?** which literally means "How stands it?"
4. **Takk, bra**, "Fine, thanks". You can equally well say **Takk, bare bra**, "Thank you, nothing but well", or **Bare bra, takk**.
5. **Mine spørsmål**, "my questions". Compounds take the gender of the last element. Where this last element is a neuter noun of one syllable, the whole compound is inflected like a monosyllabic neuter and takes no ending in the plural: **et spørsmål**, "a question", **spørsmål**, "questions".

### (Innledning)

6. **Er jeg norsk?** "Am I Norwegian?" Simple inversion of subject and verb is in Norwegian the normal way of converting a statement, e.g. **Jeg er norsk**, into the corresponding question. See also Lesson 4, §2.
7. **Snakker De norsk?** "Do you speak Norwegian?" As implied by the preceding note (§6), in Norwegian no auxiliary comparable to English "do" or "does" is used to form the interrogative or negative.
8. **Lite grann**, "a little". **Et grann**, "a small amount, a grain, a smattering". **Lite** is the neuter form of the adjective **liten**, "small": **en liten bok**, "a small book"; **et lite bord**, "a small table". The plural is irregular: **små bøker**, "small books". In the expression **lite grann** the indefinite article is omitted.
9. **Deres stemme**, "your voice". The genitive of **De** is **Deres**, which is used for the possessive adjective "your". Like other pronouns ending in -s it is not inflected: **Deres bok**, "your book"; **Deres bord**, "your table"; **Deres bøker**, "your books".
10. **Meget godt**, "very well". As an adverb, **meget** means "very" or "(very) much". It can also be the neuter form of the adjective **megen**, "much": e.g. **meget brød**, "much bread"; "a lot of bread".

### Leksjon 1

#### MIN FAMILIE

1. **Min kone**, "my wife". It is more formal to say **min frue**, or **min hustru**. The word **kone** also means "woman", especially an old woman. **Min datter**, "my daughter". The plural of **datter** is irregular: **døtre**, "daughters".
2. **Jeg heter Lind**, "My name is Lind". **Å hete** means "to be called". You can also say **Mitt navn er Lind**, "My name is Lind", but it sounds more formal than **Jeg heter Lind**. **Å kalle** means "to call, to give the name": **Hun heter Elisabet**, **men de kaller henne Bett**, "Her name is Elizabeth, but they call her Betty".
3. **Min kone heter fru Lind**, "My wife's name is Mrs. Lind". The corresponding noun is **en frue**, "a married woman". The -e is dropped when the noun is used as a title. Notice that the title **fru** is written with a small initial. The same applies to the title given to an unmarried woman, **frøken**, "Miss", and to a man, **herr**, "Mr.", unless, of course, the title occurs initially in the sentence, or as an address in a letter.
4. **Fru Linds mann**, "Mrs. Lind's husband". The genitive or possessive ending -s is added straight on to the noun, without an apostrophe. After a genitive the noun never takes the definite article. The genitive in -s is used both for human beings and for inanimate objects, but Norwegian tends to prefer to express these relationships by means of prepositions. Instead of **fru Linds mann**, one can say **mannen til fru Lind**. Notice that the noun then takes the definite article. **En mann** means both "a man" and "a husband", and has an irregular plural: **menn**, "men".
5. **Barn**, "children". **Barn**, as a neuter noun of one syllable, takes no ending for the indefinite plural. The definite plural is irregular: **barna**, "the children".
6. **Han er tolv år gammel**, "He is twelve years old". After the verb **å være**, "to be", the adjective agrees with the subject: **Barnet er ett år gammelt**, "The child is one year old"; **De er gamle**, "they are old". Adjectives in -el, -en, -er drop the -e- of this syllable when a final -e is added, and a double consonant preceding -el, -en, -er is simplified: **gammel**, **gamle**; **gretten**, **gretne**, "peevish"; **bitter**, **bitre**, "bitter".
7. **Bror**, "brother". The plural is irregular: **brødre**, "brothers".



(1)

8. **Søster**, "sister". Nouns in **-el** and **-er** drop the **-e-** of this syllable in the plural: **søstre**, "sisters"; **søstrene**, "the sisters".
9. **Søsken**, "brother(s) and sister(s)". The word **søsken** is only used in the plural, and denotes children of the same parents, without indicating their sex. **Han har fem søsken** means that he is one of six children; **de er fem søsken** means that they are a group of five brothers and/or sisters. Children who have only one parent in common are referred to as **halvsøsken**, "half brother(s) and/or sister(s)".
10. **Far**, "father". The plural is irregular: **fedre**, "fathers". The form **far** is a contraction of an older form, **fader**, which survives in the adjective **faderlig**, "fatherly", and in a number of other words, often of a religious nature. Thus, the Lord's prayer is called in Norwegian **Fadervår**, from the first words of the prayer, **Fader vår, du som er i himmelen**, literally, "our Father, (thou) who art in (the) heaven".
11. **Mor**, "mother". The plural is irregular: **mødre**, "mothers". Like **far**, the word **mor** is a contraction of an older word, **moder**, which survives in the adjective **moderlig**, "motherly", and in a number of other words. Thus "Mother Earth" is always referred to as **Moder Jord**.
12. **Hans far**, "his father", **hennes mor**, "her mother". If "his" and "her" referred back to the subject of the sentence, the possessives used would be, not **hans**, **hennes**, but **sin** (neuter **sitt**): e.g.  
**Harald leser i boken sin**, Harold is reading his (= his own) book.  
**Harald leker med toget sitt**, Harold is playing with his (= his own) train.  
 For details on the use of **sin**, see *Appendix*, §9.
13. **Foreldre**, "parents". Like **søsken**, the word **foreldre** exists only in the plural. In the singular one has to refer specifically to **far** or **mor**. Of somebody who has lost his father we say that he is **farløs**, "fatherless". If he has lost his mother, he is **morløs**, "motherless", and if he has lost both his parents, he is **foreldreløs**, "orphan(ed)".
14. **En lenestol**, "an easy-chair", literally "a chair for leaning back in". The first part of the compound is the verb **å lene**, "to lean".
15. **Min kone . . . leser i en bok**, "My wife . . . is reading a book". The prepositional expression **i en bok** indicates that she is occupied reading a book, without finishing it. If you finish the book within the period of time mentioned, you would not use the preposition: **Hun leser en bok hver uke**, "She reads one book every week".
16. **Klapper**, "is stroking". **Å klappe** means both "to stroke", "to pat", and "to applaud". Compare English "to clap".
17. **Harald ligger på kne**, "Harold is on his knees", "Harold is kneeling". **Et kne**, "a knee" has the irregular plural **knær**, "knees". Notice that Norwegian uses the singular, without a possessive adjective: literally, "Harold lies on knee".

## Leksjon 2

### SPØRSMÅL OG SVAR

1. **Spørsmål og svar**, "question(s) and answer(s)". As neither of the two nouns changes for the indefinite plural, there is only the context to indicate that the words are used here in the plural.
2. **Ja, det er hun**, "Yes, she is", literally "Yes, that is she". Note this idiomatic way of expressing the English construction.
3. **Har Harald noen brødre?** "Has Harold any brothers?" **Noen** is the plural of the indefinite adjective **noen**, neuter form **noe**, meaning "some" or "any".

**Ser du noen bok her?** Do you see any book here?

**Jeg har ikke noe brød**, I haven't any bread.

**Jeg har noen bøker**, I have some books.

4. **Han har ingen brødre**, "He has no brothers". **Ingen** is the plural of the indefinite adjective **ingen**, neuter form **intet**:

**Jeg har ingen bok**, I have no book.

**Jeg har intet brød**, I have no bread.

**Jeg har ingen bøker**, I have no books.

Instead of the indefinite adjective **ingen**, colloquial Norwegian tends to use **ikke noen**, **ikke noe**. You can therefore say either **han har ingen brødre**, or **han har ikke noen brødre**. In the case of **intet**, the alternative **ikke noe** is used almost invariably.

5. **Hvem er det som røker en sigarett?** "Who is it who is smoking a cigarette?" **Hvem** is an interrogative pronoun referring to persons, and corresponds to English "who, whom, which". The corresponding interrogative pronoun referring to inanimate objects is **hva**. **Som** is a relative pronoun, practically the only one in use in modern Norwegian. It is indeclinable, and refers both to living beings and inanimate objects. It corresponds to English "who, which, that". **Som** also corresponds to the conjunction "as": e.g. **Han er ikke så stor som meg**, "He is not as big as I (am)".

### Leksjon 3

#### VÅRT HJEM

1. **Hjem**, "home". Notice the expression **å gå hjem**, "to go home", and **å være hjemme**, "to be at home". Similarly, **å gå ut**, "to go out"; **å være ute**, "to be out". In a number of cases, the short form indicates that there is a movement from one place to another, whereas the long form indicates a stay within the precincts indicated by the adverb.
2. **De fleste familier**, "most families". **Flest** is the irregular superlative of the adjective **mange**, "many". It is preceded, as here, by the definite article **de**, but the noun following is used without the suffixed definite article to indicate families generally. Compare **De fleste familier har barn**, "Most families (families in general) have children". To express the majority of a specific group, say the families living in one particular block of flats, the preposition **av** is inserted, and the suffixed definite article of the noun is added: **De fleste av familiene har bil**, "Most of the families (in that block) have a car".  
The comparison is as follows:  

<b>mange</b> (pl.), many
<b>flere</b> (or <b>fler</b> ), more
<b>flest</b> , most; <b>de fleste</b> , the majority

**Mange, flere, flest** are used for things that can be counted. For non-countable things, **mye** (**meget**) **mer**, **mest** are used: **de fleste dager**, "most days"; **det meste av dagen**, "most of the day".
3. **Mange har eget hus**, "Many have a house of their own". The adjective **egen** (c.), **eget** (n.), **egne** (pl.) is generally used to intensify a possessive adjective: **hans eget hus**, "his own house"; **Det er min egen skyld**, "It is my own fault". But in the sense of something you do not share with others, **egen** is used without the possessive adjective: **De har egen bil**, "They have a car of their own"; **et dobbeltværelse med eget bad**, "a double room with separate bathroom".
4. **Forstedene**, "the suburbs"; **en forstad**, "a suburb". Cp. **hovedstaden**, "the capital", literally "the main town", "the head town". The usual word for "a place" is **et sted**, which has the irregular plural **steder**.
5. **I utkanten av byen**, "On the outskirts of the town". Notice that Norwegian uses singular referring to one particular place on the outskirts, and plural to indicate the outskirts in general:

**Det bor mange mennesker i utkantene av byen**, There are many people living on the outskirts of the town.

(3)

6. **I denne entreen**, "in this hall". Notice that the definite article is added in full after a stressed **-e**. The same applies to indefinite and definite plural: **entreer**, "halls"; **entreene**, "the halls".
7. **I entreen er det knagger**, "In the hall there are pegs". Notice the use of the indefinite pronoun **det** as a preliminary subject. Used like this, the pronoun is uninflected, and is never stressed.
8. **Nordmenn er glad i blomster**, "Norwegians are fond of flowers". This is one of the exceptions to the rule about adjectives agreeing with the noun after the verb **å være**. Some more examples are given in the *Appendix*, §30, b.
9. **Mange forskjellige slags blomster**, "many different kinds of flowers". **Slags** is the genitive of the noun **slag** (n.), "kind, type, variety", and functions as an indeclinable adjective: **en slags flåte**, "a sort of raft"; **et slags spill**, "some kind of game"; **mange slags viner**, "many varieties of wines".
10. **Spinat, blomkål, løk**, "spinach, cauliflower, onion". These nouns are all common gender; only **løk** can have a plural, **løker**. Note, however, that **løk** is often used in the singular in Norwegian where English uses the plural: **steikt løk**, "fried onions"; **biff med løk**, "beefsteak and onions". Note also **purreløk**, "leek", and **blomsterløk**, "bulb".
11. **Gulrøtter**, "carrots", literally "yellow roots". **Røtter** is the plural of the irregular **en rot**, "a root".

## Leksjon 4

### SAMTALE

1. **Samtale**, "conversation". The prefix **sam-** corresponds to the adverb **sammen**, together, and occurs frequently where English has the prefix "co-":  
 samarbeid (n.), co-operation  
 samvirkelag (n.), co-operative store; *literally* group working together  
 sameksistens (c.), coexistence  
 samferdsel (c.), communication  
 samklang (c.), harmony  
 samliv (n.), life lived together; usually, married life  
 et samnordisk radioprogram, a radio programme shared by the Scandinavian countries  
 samtidig, at the same time  
 hyggelig samvær (n.), *literally* "pleasant being-together (gathering, meeting, party)", often equivalent to the English "a good time", e.g.: Takk for hyggelig samvær, "Thank you for a very pleasant time".
2. **Kan**, "can", present tense of the auxiliary verb **å kunne**, "to be able (to)", "to have permission (to)". **Kan jeg komme?** "May I come?" Note that **å kunne** can also mean "to know, to have knowledge of": **Han kan fransk**, "He knows French".  
 In forming a question from statements in which the finite verb has another verb dependent on it, it is of course the *finite* verb and the subject that are inverted, i.e. **Kan De si meg . . . ?** (compare English: "Can you tell me?", not "Can tell you me?").
3. **Si meg**, "tell me". The verb **å si** also renders the English "to say".
4. **Den er verken stor eller liten**, "It is neither large nor small". The common gender **den** is used because of the reference back to the common gender noun **villa**. Where there is no such reference, the neuter form **det** is used: **Det er en villa han har kjøpt**, "It is a villa he has bought". Note also **enten . . . eller**, "either . . . or". (It may also be noted that although **verken** is the officially recognized way of spelling the word, the form **hverken** is still used.)
5. **La meg se . . . ett, to, tre**, "Let me see . . . one, two, three". The noun understood is **rom**, and as that is a neuter noun, **ett** is used. To the question **Hvor mange bøker har De?** "How many books have you

- got?", the answer would be **en, to, tre . . .**, since **bok** is common gender.
6. **Regner med**, "include", *literally* "reckon with". Synonyms are **å ta med**, **å inkludere**. **Å regne med** also means "to count on": **Vi kan ikke regne med at han vil hjelpe oss**, "We cannot count on his helping us". **Å regne** means "to calculate, to do sums". Note **en regning**, "a bill". **Når vi ikke regner med**, "if we do not include", is also equivalent to our English construction "without counting".
  7. **Hvor vokser blomstene?** "Where do the flowers grow?" **Å vokse** is an intransitive verb. The verb for the transitive "grow, cultivate" is **å dyrke**, e.g. **Han dyrker blomster**, "He grows flowers".
  8. **Et par**, "a couple, a few". Here **et par** means "roughly", "two or three". But the word often means "a set of two": **et par sokker**, a pair of socks; **et par bukser**, a pair of trousers; **et par briller**, a pair of spectacles. Notice that Norwegian in such expressions uses no preposition. That is also the case with other nouns indicating quantity: **en kopp te**, "a cup of tea"; **et glass melk**, "a glass of milk".

## Leksjon 5

### VÅR DAGLIGSTUE

1. Når vi kommer inn i stuen, "When we enter (or come into) the sitting-room". The conjunction *når* is used when the meaning is "every time, whenever": *Når solen står opp, blir det lyst*, "Whenever the sun rises, it gets light". *Når* is also used when the meaning is "as soon as" in the future: *Når jeg får tid, skal jeg komme*, "When I get time I'll come". About one particular occasion in the past *da* is used:

*Da han kom til stasjonen, hadde toget gått*, When he got to the station, the train had left.

*Når* may also render "if": e.g. *når så er*, "if that is so"; *når bare*, "if only". There was an example of this use in Lesson 4: *når vi ikke regner med . . .*, "if we don't count . . .".

2. *Inn i*, "into". *Inn* always implies movement or direction: *Vi går inn i huset*, "We enter the house"; *Skal vi gå inn?* "Shall we go in?" The English preposition *in* is usually rendered by the Norwegian preposition *i*: *Han er i Norge*, "He is in Norway".
3. *Lengst*, "furthest, farthest". *Lengst* is the superlative of *langt*. The comparative also changes its vowel: *lenger*, "further, farther, longer". (See *Appendix*, §43.)
4. *Borte i kroken*, "over in the corner". The adverb *borte*, "over there", indicates a state of rest. The shorter form *bort*, on the other hand, indicates movement: *Han setter stolen bort i kroken*, "He puts the chair over in the corner". In both these cases the adverb is used with a following preposition to form a prepositional phrase governing the noun *kroken*. See also Lesson 18, §1.
5. *Til venstre for pianoet*, "to the left of the piano". *Venstre*, "left", and *høyre*, "right", have only the comparative forms, although the sense is positive. They are frequently used in phrases with a noun such as *hånd*, "hand", *side*, "side", *fot*, "foot", etc. understood: *Ta til høyre*, "turn right"; *venstre om!* "left turn!" They are also used in a similar way to their equivalents in this country, to indicate political parties: *høyre*, "the conservative party"; *venstre*, "the liberal party".
6. *Midt imot dette . . . står det en sofa*, "Opposite this . . . is (literally, stands) a settee". The neuter form *dette* is used because it refers back to the neuter noun *vindu*. Note that when English generally

(5)

uses the verb "to be", Norwegian is more precise, using *stå*, for things that "stand", and *ligge* for things that "lie": e.g. (Lesson 6) *Det ligger også noen aviser der*, "There are also some newspapers there".

7. *Et lite rundt bord*, "a small round table". The plural of *liten* is irregular: *små runde bord*, "small round tables". Note also the irregular definite form: *det lille runde bordet*, "the small round table".
8. *Man*, "one". The indefinite pronoun *man* means "people in general", although it can refer to a restricted number of people, for instance in a sentence like: *Man snakker aldri om det i familien*, "They never talk about it in the family". Other expressions are gaining ground in Norwegian: *folk*, "people"; *de*, "they"; *vi*, "we"; *en*, "one".

*Folk sier så mye*, People will talk (literally People say so many things).

*De sier han er syk*, They say he is ill.

*Vi får håpe det beste*, We must hope for the best.

*En* is one of the forms most in use at the present time:

*En kan aldri vite*, You never can tell; One never knows.

9. *Et deilig, tykt teppe*, "a nice, thick carpet". Notice that the adjective *deilig*, like all adjectives in *-ig*, *-lig*, takes no ending *-t* in the indefinite neuter singular.
10. *Sentraloppvarming*, "central heating". Lesson 5 contains several words illustrating the ease with which Norwegian forms compounds: *leselampe*; *blomsterbord*; *blomsterpotte*; *askebeger*; *pianostol*; *bokhylle*. The gender of these compound nouns is taken from that of the last component.
11. *Radiatoren*, "the radiator". The stress is on the third syllable in the singular, but is shifted to the fourth syllable, *-to-*, in the plural: *radia'torer*. A few nouns shift the stress like this. Note that this happens with *pro'fessor*, *profes'sorer*, "professor(s)", *gene'rator*, *genera'torer*, "generator(s)", *gladi'ator*, *gladia'torer*, "gladiator(s)".
12. *Om kvelden*, "in the evening". *Om kvelden* can mean both "one particular evening" and, as here, "in the evenings (generally)". The same applies to a number of expressions with *om*: *om dagen*, "by day", "that day"; *om natten*, "by night", "that night"; *om sommeren*, "in summer", "that summer".

*Det hadde regnet om natten*, It had been raining during the night.

*De reiste klokken 10 om morgenen*, They left at 10 a.m.

*Om vinteren er det mye snø i Norge*, In winter there is much snow in Norway.



(5)

13. Når det blir mørkt, "when it gets dark". *Blir* is the present tense of *å bli*, "to become", "to get". *Å bli* implies a change: *Han ble syk*, "He was taken ill"; *Han ble sint*, "He grew angry". Compare *å være*, "to be" in the sense "be in a state of": *Han er syk*, "He is ill"; *Han var blind*, "He was blind".  
Note that *å bli* also has the meaning "to remain", "to stay on": *Han ble i Oslo i to dager*, "He remained in Oslo for two days".
14. Det blir mørkt, "It gets dark". This impersonal construction is used more widely in Norwegian than in English: *Det banker på døren*, "There is a knock at the door". Notice the idiomatic phrase *Hvordan står det til?* "How are you?" (Further information can be found in the *Appendix*, §48, b.)
15. (Vi) tenner, "(We) light". *Å tenne* is always used about lighting a candle, and often also about switching on an electric lamp, although, when talking about electricity, it is very common to say *å slå på lyset*, or *å skru på lyset*, "to switch on the light".
16. Trekker for, "draw". There are a number of compound verbs in Norwegian similar to *å trekke for*, e.g. *å ta av*, "to lose weight"; *å ta med*, "to include"; *å ta på*, "to put on"; *å gripe inn*, "to interfere"; *å dele ut*, "to hand out"; *å skrive av*, "to copy"; *å ta etter*, "to imitate".
17. Gardinene, "the curtains". A few words can be common gender or neuter: *en gardin* or *et gardin*, *en smell* or *et smell*, "a bang".

## Leksjon 6

### SAMTALE MELLOM LÆRER OG ELEV

1. Helt full, "quite full". The adverb *helt* is formed from the adjective *hel*, "whole", by adding *t*. Adverbs are frequently formed from adjectives in this way:  
*Jeg er sikker på at han snakker norsk*, I am sure that he speaks Norwegian.  
*Han snakker sikkert norsk*, He surely speaks Norwegian.  
*Astrid er sen*, Astrid is late.  
*Astrid kom sent*, Astrid came late.  
*Maten er god*, The food is good.  
*De lever godt*, They live well.
2. Det vet jeg ikke, "I don't know", literally "it know I not". If unstressed, as here, *det* is a personal pronoun (= "it"). For the unstressed *det* see *Appendix*, §48. *Det* could also be stressed and would then become a demonstrative pronoun (= "that"); see *Appendix*, §10.
3. Jeg har ikke talt dem, "I have not counted them". *Talt* is the past participle of *å telle*, "to count". This verb can be regular: *å telle*, past tense: *telte*, "counted", past participle: *telt*. But it can also be irregular, with change of the stem vowel in the past tense and the past participle: *å telle*, *talte*, *talt*. *Dem* is the direct object form of the personal pronoun in the third person plural, *de*.
4. Ingenting, "nothing". *Ingenting*, or *ikke noe*, is normally used in the neuter singular instead of the neuter form of the indefinite pronoun *ingen*. The neuter singular form proper of *ingen*, i.e. *intet*, has a literary flavour: *Intet nytt fra Vestfronten*, "All Quiet on the Western Front" (literally "Nothing new from the Western Front"). *Ingen*, *ingenting* are logically the opposites of *noen*, *noenting*:  
*Har du sett noen?* Nei, *ingen*, Have you seen anybody? No, nobody.  
*Har du kjøpt noenting?* Nei, *ingenting*, Have you bought anything? No, nothing.
5. Jo, "yes". The adverb *jo* is used for "yes", instead of *ja*, in reply to a preceding negative question. The negative aspect of the question is here contained in the indefinite pronoun *ingenting*. More often than not it is the negative adverb *ikke* that conveys the negative aspect: *Kommer han ikke?* Jo, han kommer, "Isn't he coming? Yes, he is coming".

(6)

6. **Det gleder meg å høre**, "I am pleased to hear it", literally "it delights me to hear". Note the impersonal construction in Norwegian. More examples are given in *Appendix*, §48, b.

**Det gleder meg** is also often used as a courteous expression of pleasure when you are introduced to people.

There is also a reflexive verb **å glede seg**, "to look forward (to)". This verb is not impersonally constructed: **Jeg gleder meg til å reise til Norge**, "I am looking forward to going to Norway".

## Leksjon 7

### SAMMENLIGNINGER

1. **La oss sammenligne**, "let us compare". **La** is the imperative of the verb **å la**, "to let, to allow". **La** is used with the infinitive of the main verb, without the particle **å**: **la ham komme**, "let him come". The main verb is sometimes left out: **Skal vi gå? Ja, la oss det**, "Shall we go? Yes, let's". The full expression would be **Ja, la oss gjøre det**, "Yes, let us do that".

**Å sammenligne**, "to compare", consists of the adverb **sammen**, "together", and the verb **å ligne**, "to be like, to liken". The corresponding noun, **sammenligning** (c.), is derived from the verb by means of the suffix **-ing**. Compare **å blande**, "to mix"; **blanding**, "mixture". The adverb **sammen** occurs as a prefix in a number of words, e.g. **å sammenføye**, "to join together"; **sammenheng** (c.), "context", "connection"; **sammensatt**, "complicated".

2. **Med familien Haugs**, "with the Haug family's (room)". The genitive **-s** is here attached to a group of words, **familien Haug**, which is treated as a unit. In such groups, the ending is attached to the last element of the group. Only a few such groups occur, e.g. **kongen av Norges plikter**, "the King of Norway's duties"; **dronningen av Englands gemal**, "the Queen of England's consort".
3. **Haugs er**, "the Haugs are". The ending **-s**, although historically genitive, here functions as a plural ending. **Haugs**: "the members of the Haug family". The genitive of **Haug** is **Haug's**, and is pronounced "Haugses".
4. **Hos oss**, "at our house". **Hos oss** corresponds exactly to French *chez nous* and German *bei uns*. The word **hjemme** is often added: **hjemme hos oss**.

This expression is used with all the object forms of the personal pronouns, singular and plural: **hos meg**, "at my house"; **hos deg** (familiar address), "at your house"; **hos Dem** (polite address), "at your house", etc. It is also used with proper names and nouns indicating people. In this construction there is no genitive corresponding to the English possessive in 's:

**hos Hansen**, at Hansen's (house or place)  
**hos Hansens**, at the Hansens' (house or place)  
**hos min onkel**, at my uncle's  
**hos vaktmesteren**, at the caretaker's  
**hos Steen & Strøm**, at Steen & Strøm's (store)  
**hos bakeren**, at the baker's (shop)

(7)

5. **Begge to**, "both (of them)". The word **begge** means "both", and can be used on its own, without the word **to**, "two", being added:

**begge brødrene** or **begge de to brødrene**, both the brothers

Notice that in the expression *both . . . and* another word is used, **både**:

**både han og jeg**, both he and I

6. **Spiller piano**, "plays the piano". Notice that no definite article is used in Norwegian for playing an instrument:

**Jeg spiller fiolin**, I play the violin.

**Jeg spiller litt fløyte**, I play the flute a little.

The same rule applies to games:

**Spiller De kort?** Do you play cards?

7. **Bra**, "well". **Bra** functions both as an indeclinable adjective, meaning "good", and as an adverb, meaning "well":

**en bra radio**, a good radio-set.

**et bra piano**, a good piano.

**Hun spiller bra**, She plays well.

Note that "well" is sometimes expressed by means of **vel**:

**Lev vel!** all the best! (*literally* live well)

**å gjøre noe vel**, to do something well, thoroughly.

The adverb "well" at the beginning of a sentence, used as an expletive and often expressing hesitation, uncertainty or reservation, can always be translated **vel**:

**Kommer han? Vel, jeg vet ikke**, Is he coming? Well, I don't know.

Note that in colloquial Norwegian **ja**, often pronounced and even written **tja**, is frequently used with the same meaning as **vel**: **Kommer han? Tja, jeg vet ikke**.

8. **Et flygel**, "a grand piano". **Et piano** is an upright piano, the man who plays either of these instruments is **en pianist**, a woman player is **en pianistinne**. The word **klaver** (n.) is also occasionally used, especially in the compound **en klaverkonsert**, which means both a piano recital and a piano concerto: **Griegs klaverkonsert i a-moll**, "Grieg's piano concerto in A minor".
9. **Notene sine**, "her music". **Noter** is used about printed music. **Å lese noter** is "to read music"; **Kan du noter?** means "Can you read music?" "A score" is in Norwegian **et partitur**.

(7)

10. **Bedre**, "better", comparative of the adverbs **bra**, **godt** and **vel**.

11. **Hun er vel den beste pianistinnen**, "She is probably the best (female) pianist". The sentence modifier **vel** indicates that the speaker is making some mental reservations: "I think, in my opinion". More information about sentence modifiers will be found in the *Appendix*, §70.

12. **Pianistinne**, "female pianist". **-inne** is one of the suffixes used to indicate a female executant of a profession, and in a few other cases:

**en lærer**, a (male) teacher

**en sanger**, a (male) singer

**en danser**, a (male) dancer

**en venn**, a (male) friend

**en lærerinne**, a (female) teacher

**en sangerinne**, a (female) singer

**en danserinne**, a (female) dancer

**en venninne**, a (female) friend

Other ways of distinguishing between male and female are illustrated by:

**en prins**, a prince

**en ekspeditør**, a (male) shop assistant

**en massør**, a masseur

**en kontorist**, a (male) clerk

**en hallomann**, a (male) announcer

**en prinsesse**, a princess

**en ekspeditrise**, a (female) shop assistant

**en massøse**, a masseuse

**en kontordame**, a (female) clerk

**en hallodame**, a (female) announcer

13. **Selv spiller jeg ikke**, "I myself do not play". **Selv** is here used as a demonstrative adjective. It can take the ending **-e**, but is otherwise indeclinable. It is usually placed after a noun or a pronoun, and can be separated from them. In either case **selv** receives strong stress. The meaning varies with the word it qualifies, so that it may mean "myself", "yourself", etc. according to the context:

**Jeg selv så det** or **jeg så det selv**, I saw it myself.

**Ibsen selv kunne ikke gjort det bedre**, Ibsen himself could not have improved on it.

**De ville gjøre det selv**, They wanted to do it themselves.

When placed immediately *before* the word it qualifies, **selv** is unstressed like its English equivalent "even", whereas the word it qualifies is strongly stressed:

**Selv jeg så det**, Even I saw it.

**Selv nå finnes det folk som ikke har elektrisitet**, Even now there are people who don't have electricity.

The definite form **selve** is also used to single out, and is always placed

(7)

before a noun:

Selve reisen tar 5 dager, The journey itself takes 5 days.  
Det var som selve fanden, Why the devil—(literally That was like the devil himself).

A superlative selveste is sometimes used:

Mener jeg ikke det er selveste kongen! My word, if it isn't the king himself!

Note the idiomatic Takk for sist!—Selv takk! "Thanks for the last time we were together!"—"The same to you!"; "Thank you!"  
Note also the substantivised et selv, "personality, ego":

det gyntiske selv, the Gyntian personality (Ibsen's Peer Gynt).

There are numerous compounds with selv: selvsikker, self-assured; selvbevisst, arrogant; selvtilfreds, self-satisfied, etc.  
Another form of selv, sjøl, is also used in Modern Norwegian.

14. Peis, "(an) open fireplace". People in Norway have peis for decorative rather than functional purposes. This is reflected in the noun en peisestue, "a room with an open fireplace". The peis is usually placed in a corner of the room. Note that the article is omitted. This is usually the case with items of which you generally possess only one. You say for instance: Vi har kjøleskap men ikke vaskemaskin, "We have a refrigerator but not a washing-machine"; de har bil, "they have a car"; de har hytte på fjellet, "they have a hut (lodge) in the mountains".
15. Malt, "painted". Malt is the past participle of the verb å male, "to paint". The past participle is often formed by adding t to the stem of the verb.
16. Malt av, "painted by". The idea of "by" before the name of a composer, painter, etc. is always expressed by the preposition av:

en sang av Grieg, a song by Grieg.  
"Peer Gynt" er skrevet av Ibsen, "Peer Gynt" was written by Ibsen.

## Leksjon 8

### ENDA EN SAMTALE

1. Enda en samtale, literally, "still one more conversation". Note the different meanings of the word enda in Norwegian:

enda en gang, once more (literally still one time).

Doktoren er der enda, The doctor is still there.

Posten har ikke kommet enda, The post hasn't arrived yet.

Han var veldig trett, men enda arbeidet han videre, He was very tired, but all the same he went on working.

Du skal få pengene, enda du ikke fortjener dem, You shall have the money, although you don't deserve it.

2. Nå ville jeg gjerne, "now I should like to". Ville is the past tense of the auxiliary å ville, "to want to, to feel like". Ville and skulle, "should, was going to", together with the infinitive of the main verb form the conditional tense. In requests you can use the future tense, but it is more polite to use the conditional tense:

Jeg vil gjerne se på noen slips } I should like to look at some  
Jeg ville gjerne se på noen slips } ties.

As a general rule, ville and skulle are interchangeable.

Note the use of gjerne, literally "willingly", in conjunction with a verb to indicate a liking for doing something, e.g.:

Jeg går gjerne med deg på kino, I should like to come with you to the pictures.

See also Lesson 12, §10.

3. Jeg tror jeg liker Deres best, "I think I like yours best". Å tro is the normal way of rendering the English "to believe", or "to think" used as a synonym for this in relation to some matter the evidence as to which is taken to be incomplete in some sense:

Han tror på Gud, He believes in God.

Jeg tror ham ikke, I don't believe him.

Jeg tror det blir regn i morgen, I think (believe) it will rain tomorrow.

The matter about which the belief is expressed may be one's own tastes (as in Jeg tror jeg liker Deres best) or intentions, which can be



(8)

indicated in this way tentatively and as if they were not necessarily certain and decided:

Jeg tror vi skal la saken bero inntil videre, I think we'll leave the matter for the time being.

Like "to believe" in English, *å tro* sometimes implies little more than "to have heard", "to have been informed":

Jeg tror det er en god film, I believe it's a good film.

Jeg tror han skal kjøpe huset, I believe he is going to buy the house.

Used in this sense it is in contrast with *å synes*, which means "to think", "to consider", "to be of the opinion", in relation to a matter felt to be sufficiently within one's knowledge, thus:

Jeg synes det er en god film, (I have seen it and) I think it's a good film.

Jeg synes han skal kjøpe huset, I consider that he should buy the house.

4. **De giftet seg**, "They got married". The reflexive pronoun *seg*, "one-self" and reflexive verbs in general, are dealt with in the *Appendix*, §§57 and 58.
5. **De giftet seg jo også mye senere**, "Then they got married so much later". For the function of the sentence modifier *jo*, see *Appendix*, §70.
6. **Hva synes De**, "What do you think". For the meaning of *å synes*, see §3 above. Further information about this type of verb is given in the *Appendix*, §64.
7. **Ikke sant?** "Don't you agree?"—literally, "not true", short for "is that not true?" *Ikke sant* is added to solicit agreement in the same way as "isn't it?", "hasn't he?", etc. are added in English:

Du kommer, ikke sant? You are coming, aren't you?

Du betalte, ikke sant? You paid, didn't you?

De har bodd her lenge, ikke sant? You have lived here a long time, haven't you?

Compare *n'est-ce pas?* in French and *nicht wahr?* in German.

8. **Kan ikke la være å beundre**, "can't help admiring". *La være* means "leave off, leave in peace":

La meg være, Leave me alone.

*La være* plus the infinitive corresponds to the gerund construction in -ing in English:

Jeg kunne ikke la være å le, I couldn't help laughing.

Vi lot være å spise frokost, We skipped (eating) breakfast.

## Leksjon 9

### ET BESØK

1. **Et besøk**, "a visit". The prefix *be-* occurs in a number of loan words and is always unstressed except in the word *bearbeide*, "adapt", and its derivatives *bearbeidelse* (c.), "adaptation", and *bearbeider* (c.), "adaptor".
2. **Det ringer på døren**, "There's a ring at the door". Note the impersonal construction in Norwegian. This is dealt with in the *Appendix*, §48, b.
3. **Er nettopp kommet**, "has just arrived". This is an example of the use of the auxiliary *å være* and the past participle of the main verb. Nowadays, the tendency is to use *å ha* with all verbs, but formerly *å være* was used with verbs indicating change or movement. In a few cases it is still possible to use either one or the other: e.g. **Han er kommet** or **Han har kommet**, "He has come (arrived)". Further examples are given in the *Appendix*, §51.
4. **Vi . . . håndhilser på**, "We . . . shake hands with". *Å håndhilse* means, literally, to greet by the hand.
5. **Ber ham komme inn**, "ask him to come in". *Å be* means "to ask, to beg, to pray, to invite":

Jeg ber om forlatelse, I beg your pardon, please forgive me (often shortened to *om forlatelse*).

Hedvig ba aftenbønn, Hedvig said evening prayers.

De har bedt oss til middag, They have invited us to dinner.

Note that *be* takes an infinitive without the particle *å*:

De ba oss komme, They asked us to come.

The same applies to the verb *å se*, "to see", and to the modal auxiliaries:

Jeg så dem komme, I saw them coming.

Det kan godt være, That may well be.

Note especially: *å jeg ber*, "don't mention it".

6. **Kort etter**, "shortly after". *Kort* is here used as an adverb. As an adjective it is invariable in the singular.



(9)

7. **Sitte ned**, "Sit down". **Å sitte** is usually intransitive, as here. There are, however, rare uses of it as a transitive verb. Note especially:

**Hun satt modell**, She posed as a model.

"To sit" in the transitive sense of "to seat", "to place", is usually rendered by the verb **å sette**, with which **å sitte** must not be confused. **Å sette** is weak but irregular: **å sette, setter, satte, (har) satt**. Thus, **Han satte barnet på stolen**, "He sat the child on the chair". The reflexive verb **å sette seg** and **å sitte ned** can be used interchangeably, like "to seat oneself" and "to sit down" in English:

**Vil De ikke sitte ned?** } Won't you sit down (seat yourself, take  
**Vil De ikke sette Dem?** } a seat)?

8. **En niese**, "a niece". Note that the word is pronounced as a three-syllable word, **ni-e-se**. The noun for a corresponding male relative is **en nevø**, "a nephew". But Norwegian also uses words that include information about the related parent of the nephew or niece:

**min brorsønn**, my nephew, my brother's son  
**min brordatter**, my niece, my brother's daughter  
**min søstersønn**, my nephew, my sister's son  
**min søsterdatter**, my niece, my sister's daughter.

9. **En niese av min kone**, "a niece of my wife's". Note that Norwegian here uses no genitive corresponding to the idiomatic use of the possessive with 's in English:

**en kollega av Hansen**, a colleague of Hansen's  
**en slektning av oss**, a relative of ours.

Note also:

**en venn av meg**, a friend of mine.

10. **Fra landet**, "from the country". **Land** (n.) is used for "land" in the meaning of "nation", for "countryside" and for the ground as opposed to the sea:

**Norge blir ofte kalt midnattssolens land**, Norway is often called the land of the midnight sun.

**De bor i Oslo, men reiser alltid på landet om sommeren**, They live in Oslo, but always go into the country in summer.

**En landkrabbe liker seg best på land**, A landlubber prefers to be on dry land.

Note especially **utenlands**, "abroad":

**I våre dager er det vanlig å reise utenlands**, Nowadays it is usual to travel abroad.

(9)

11. **Bo hos oss**, "stay with us". **Bo** means "stay, dwell, live, be settled":

**Hun har bodd i Oslo hele sitt liv**, She has lived in Oslo all her life.

Note **enebolig** (c.), a popular alternative for **villa**, that is, a detached house for one family; **bolignød** (c.), housing shortage; **bopel** (c.), residence.

12. **Et par dager**, "a day or two". Other ways of giving a rough estimate are **en dag eller to**, "a day or two", **en to-tre dager**, "a couple of days", **et par-tre dager**, "two or three days".

**Et par** is also used in the strict sense of "a pair":

**et par sko**, a pair of shoes  
**et par hansker**, a pair of gloves

Note especially:

**et par bukser**, a pair of trousers  
**et par briller**, a pair of spectacles  
**et par bukseseler**, a pair of braces.

13. **Hilser på**, "greet". **Hilse på** is a compound verb. Additional information about these verbs is given in the *Appendix*, §§66-69.

14. **Presenterer**, "introduces". The past tense of **presentere** is **presenterte**, and the past participle **presentert**. A large number of verbs of foreign origin in **-ere** are conjugated in the same way, all having the stress on the penultimate syllable of the infinitive, e.g.:

**å marsjere**, to march      **å parkere**, to park  
**å paradere**, to parade      **å barbere seg**, to shave

15. **Vi setter oss**, "we sit down". The weak reflexive verb **å sette seg** indicates the action of sitting down, whereas the strong verb **å sitte** indicates the position of being seated:

**Vi satte oss ved bordet**, We sat down at the table.  
**Vi satt ved bordet**, We were sitting (seated) at the table.

**Sitte** plus the adverb **ned**, indicating direction, corresponds to **å sette seg**. See Note 7 above.

16. **De siste nyheter**, "the latest news". **Nyheter** means "items of news". **Værmelding og nyheter**, "weather forecast and news". About one particular item of news the singular is used: **en sensasjonell nyhet**, "a sensational piece of news". **Siste nytt** usually means "last minute news", i.e. usually fresh information added to earlier information, but can also mean the same as **siste skrik** (n.), "the latest fashion", *le dernier cri*.

When a noun is qualified by an adjective as well as the definite article

(9)

of the adjective, the noun usually takes the normal suffix of the definite article.

**Den nye bilen, the new car.**

If it is a question of literary style or set expressions accepted by tradition, however, then only the adjectival article is used, as here: **de siste nyheter**. Thus, T. S. Eliot's work "The Waste Land" is rendered in Norwegian by **Det øde land**; "the Norwegian people", meaning the Norwegian nation, is **det norske folk**.

We shall be meeting other examples later in the course (e.g. **de andre nordiske land**, "the other Scandinavian countries", Lesson 24; **det kongelige slott**, "the Royal Palace", Lesson 31, and several examples in Lesson 49).

17. **Forretninger**, "business (affairs)". The singular **en forretning** usually means "business" in the sense of a shop, and the word is frequently used in this concrete sense also in the plural:

**Nedover gaten lå det elegante forretninger på begge sider**, Down the street there were elegant shops on either side.

18. **Asjetter**, "small plates". The saucer to go with a cup is **en skål**; **en asjett** is the small plate used for cakes, and **en tallerken** is a dinner plate. A soup plate is **en dyp tallerken**, literally a deep plate, whereas **en flat tallerken**, literally a flat plate, is used for fish and meat. Note also **en flygende tallerken**, "a flying saucer".
19. **Småkaker**, "cakes", literally "small cakes". **Småkaker** are biscuit-like cakes, also referred to as **tørre kaker**, dry cakes. Note that the English word "cakes" has been borrowed in Norwegian in the form **kjeks** (c.), and means biscuit. **Kjeks** does not change in the plural.
20. **Skjenker kaffen**, "pours out the coffee". Note **skjenkerett** (c.), licence (for hotels, restaurants) for serving alcoholic drinks.
21. **Senere får vi inn**, "later are brought in to us". Note the active construction in Norwegian where English uses the passive voice. But a passive construction is also possible in Norwegian: **Senere blir det brakt inn til oss litt frukt og andre forfriskninger**.

## Leksjon 10

### ETTERMIDDAGSKAFFE

1. **Hvordan står det til?** "How are you?" It is customary also to make enquiries about mutual acquaintances:

**Hvordan står det til med Deres far?** How is your father?

**Jeg håper det står bare bra til hjemme?** I hope all is well at home?

2. **Ja, det er jo Helga!** "Yes, it is Helga!" **Jo** here has the function of underlining the fact that it is Helga. English expresses the same idea through stressing the verb.

3. **Det var hyggelig å se deg igjen**, "It's nice to see you again". Note that Norwegian often uses the past tense to describe something that pleases or displeases you at the moment when you are talking:

**Dette var deilig kaffe**, This is nice coffee.

**Dette var et nydelig maleri**, This is a lovely painting.

**Dette var en forferdelig restaurant**, This is a dreadful restaurant.

4. **Hinannen**, "one another". Reciprocal pronoun. See *Appendix*, §59.

5. **Får jeg presentere**, "may I introduce". The fundamental meaning of **å få** is to receive, but the verb has a wide application (compare the numerous uses of the similar English verb "get"):

**Jeg fikk flere bøker i julepresang**, I had (got) several books for Christmas presents.

**Han fikk gasjepålegg**, He received (got) an increase in salary.

**Barna fikk ikke lov å være med**, The children were not allowed (did not get permission) to come along.

**Jeg fikk vondt i hodet**, I developed (got) a headache.

**Får De?** Are you being attended to? (in shops).

Note especially **få** with a following infinitive:

**Det får være grenser**, There are limits.

**Du får undersøke saken**, You'd better look into the matter.

Further information will be found in the *Appendix*, §52, c.

6. **God dag!** literally "Good day", corresponds to English "How do you do", and is the correct form of address and reply when introduced to a stranger.

Notice that the hostess greets Mr. Olsen with the heartier **god dag, god dag!**

For greetings, see also notes to the Introduction, **Nå skal vi snakke norsk**, parts I and II.

(10)

7. **Vær så god og sitt!** "Please sit down!" Note how colloquial Norwegian combines the imperative of *være* in the expressions *vær så god*, *vær så snill*, "please", "be so good (as to)", with the imperative of the main verb:

**Vær så snill og skriv når du kommer fram**, Please write when you get there.

More formal Norwegian tends, however, to use the infinitive, as you saw in the Introduction: **Vær så snill å høre etter**.

There are no hard and fast rules, but you will be on the safe side if you restrict the use of the imperative to people to whom you say *du*.

8. **Det var da leit**, "How annoying", "I am sorry to hear that". Apart from *leit*, "annoying", some other words are frequently used in this sense:

**Det var sørgelig han ikke kunne komme**, It's sad he couldn't come.  
**Det er kjedelig dere må reise i morgen**, It's a shame you have to leave tomorrow.

**Det er synd dere ikke kan bli lenger**, It's a pity you can't stay any longer.

**Det er trist at det regner hele tiden**, It's a pity it is raining all the time.

9. **Onkel**, "uncle". The loan-words *onkel* and *tante*, "aunt", are firmly established. *Tante* has superseded the older forms *moster* (c.) a contraction of *mors søster*, "mother's sister", and *faster* (c.), a contraction of *fars søster*, "father's sister". The nouns *farbror*, "father's brother", and *morbror*, "mother's brother", are not much used either.

## Leksjon 11

### SPISESTUEN

1. **Spisestue**, "dining-room", literally "eating-room". With the small modern flats the separate *spisestue* is in these days frequently replaced by *spisekrok* (c.), "a dining nook".
2. **Frokost**, "breakfast". *Fro-* means "early" (compare German *früh*) and occurs also in *fromesse* (c.), "early mass", and in *fropreken* (c.), "early (divine) service".
3. **Aftensmat**, "supper", literally "evening food". The word *kveldsmat* is also used for this meal, which is usually much simpler than the English supper. Note the genitive *-s* which occurs in a number of compounds, e.g.:

*landsmann* (c.), fellow countryman.

*livsforsikring* (c.), life insurance.

4. **Fra utlandet**, "from abroad". Compare *å reise til utlandet*, "to go abroad". Note the genitive construction *å reise utenlands*, and *å være utenlands*, "to be abroad". Compare *innenlands*, "within the country":

**Produktene brukes innenlands**, The products are consumed within the country.

5. **Den øverste enden av bordet**, "the top end of the table". *Øverste* is the superlative of a defective adjective that has no positive form. The comparative is *øvre*. See *Appendix*, §39.
6. **Gjesten sitter på hennes venstre side**, "The guest sits on her left side". In Norway, the seat to the left of the hostess is the seat of honour, and at any formal meal it is the duty and privilege of the gentleman occupying this seat to deliver a short, preferably humorous, speech at the very end of the meal, expressing the guests' gratitude to the hostess. This is called *å takke for maten*, "to say thank you for the food", and the speech itself usually closes with the phrase **takk for maten**, whereupon all the guests raise their glasses to the hostess and drink her health.
7. **Kuvert**, "place, cover". Note the pronunciation. *Kuvert* means the things laid out on the table for one person.
8. **På buffeten**, "on the sideboard". Note that the final *t*, which is mute in the singular, remains mute also when suffixes are added.

(11)

9. Alt etter årstiden, "according to, depending on, the season". Note the use of the adverb *alt* in the following sentences:

Det kommer alt an på været, It all depends on the weather.  
Det er alt som man tar det, It all depends how you look at it.  
Bilene suste forbi alt i ett, The cars speeded past frequently.  
Må du alt gå? Must you leave already?

10. Kjeks, "biscuit(s)". See Lesson 9, §19.

## Leksjon 12

### TIL BORDS

1. Til bords, "at table". The preposition *til* takes a genitive in -s in a number of expressions:

til lands, on land  
til vanns, at sea  
til fjells, in the mountains  
til fots, on foot  
fem til manns, five each.

2. Akkurat ferdig, "just ready". Akkurat used adverbially is a synonym for *nettopp*. It can also have the sense of "accurately, exactly", e.g.:

Disse skoene passer akkurat, These shoes fit perfectly.

3. Med det samme, "right away, at once". Note also the following usages of this expression:

La meg få en pakke sigaretter, og noen fyrstikker med det samme,  
Let me have a packet of cigarettes, and some matches while we are about it.

Gutten tok på seg frakken, og med det samme ringte det på døren,  
The boy was putting on his coat, and just then (at that very moment) the door-bell rang.

Note also *å være det samme*, *å bli det samme*, "to make no difference":

Det blir det samme for meg om vi går på kino lørdag eller søndag,  
It makes no difference (it's all the same) to me whether we go to the pictures on Saturday or on Sunday.

4. Ingen av delene, "neither", literally "none of the parts".  
5. Jeg må nemlig, "because I have to". Nemlig corresponds to the German *nämlich*, and serves to indicate a fuller explanation:

Han kan ikke komme i dag; han er nemlig syk, He cannot come today, because he is ill.

For the modal auxiliary *å måtte*, see *Appendix*, §52, e.

6. Hit, "hither, here". Hit indicates motion, whereas her indicates a state of rest:

Jeg kjenner meg hjemme her, I feel at home here.

Compare also *å være hjemme*, "to be at home", and *å reise hjem*, "to go home". Other examples are given in *Appendix*, §42.



(12)

7. En gang om året, "once a year". Similarly, en gang om dagen, "once a day", en gang om uken, "once a week", en gang om måneden, "once a month". Compare the derived adjectives in -lig:

en daglig foreteelse, a daily happening  
en ukentlig rapport, a weekly report  
et månedlig avdrag, a monthly instalment  
en årlig avgift, an annual charge.

Note that "fortnightly" is rendered as hver annen uke or annenhver uke, "every two weeks", or hver fjortende dag or fjortendehver dag, "every fourteen days", or to ganger om måneden, "twice a month".

8. Jeg kjenner meg likesom hjemme her, "In a way I feel at home here". Similar reflexive expressions are:

å kjenne seg fremmed, to feel a stranger  
å kjenne seg utenfor, to feel an outsider  
å kjenne seg frisk, to feel well  
å kjenne seg syk, to feel ill.

As a non-reflexive verb, the chief meaning of å kjenne is "to know", "to be acquainted with"; Jeg kjenner ham godt, "I know him well".

9. Hva synes De om byen vår? "What do you think of our town?" "Think" here is rendered by synes, because Mr. Lund has all the necessary information for forming an opinion of his own. See Lesson 8, §3.
10. Gjerne, "with pleasure". The adverb gjerne means (1) "willingly, rather, preferably", and (2) "usually":

Jeg kjøper gjerne dette bildet av deg, I'd willingly buy this picture from you.

Jeg skulle gjerne reist til London i sommer, I would (rather) have liked to go to London this summer.

Det blir gjerne sent før vi får lagt oss, It's usually late before we get to bed.

11. Svært glad i, "very fond of". Some of the more usual adverbs of degree (i.e. equivalent to "very") are veldig, riktig, ordentlig:

veldig glad i, enormously fond of  
riktig glad i, very fond of  
ordentlig glad i, really fond of.

On the slangy side, as in English, there are adverbs of degree where the word acquires a meaning opposite to the usual one:

fryktelig fin, terribly nice  
skrekkelig god, awfully good  
uhyggelig rik, frightfully rich  
forferdelig morsom, frightfully amusing.

## Leksjon 13

### MITT SOVEVÆRELSE

1. Jeg tar av meg skoene, "I take off my shoes", literally "I take off me the shoes". Lesson 13 contains a number of reflexive verbs:

å kle på seg, to dress (oneself)  
å ta på seg, to put on  
å legge seg, to go to bed  
å barbere seg, to shave (oneself)  
å ta seg et bad, to take a bath  
å tørke seg, to dry oneself.

It will be noted that with some of these verbs the reflexive pronoun is the direct object and with some the indirect. For instance, in the first example from the text, meg is the indirect object and skoene the direct. Reflexive pronouns and verbs are dealt with in Appendix, §§57 and 58.

2. Så legger jeg meg, "Then I go to bed". Note that så here means "then, thereupon". Så, however, also corresponds to English "so", meaning "to such an extent", "to such a degree":

Veiene var så dårlige at det var vanskelig å kjøre, The roads were so bad that it was difficult to drive.

3. Sovner, "fall asleep". Note that å sovne means "to fall asleep"; å sove, "to be asleep". The corresponding noun is søvn (c.), "sleep", from which the adjectives søvnig, "sleepy", and søvnløs, "sleepless", are derived.

4. Presis halv åtte, "at half past seven sharp". Synonyms for presis are akkurat, nøyaktig, på slaget, "on the stroke".

5. Om morgenen, "in the morning (in general)". Om morgenen can also mean "the next morning"; or "that morning", "in the morning" of the same day:

Han sov godt om natten, og om morgenen var han helt uthvilt, He slept well during the night, and the next morning he was completely rested.

Han mistet paraplyen som han hadde kjøpt om morgenen, He lost the umbrella which he had bought that morning.

Norwegian for "this morning" is i dag morges, for "yesterday morning" i går morges, and for "tomorrow morning" i morgen tidlig (literally "tomorrow early").



5. **Vekkeruret**, "the alarm-clock". Å vekke means "to call"; å våkne, "to wake up", and å våke, "to keep watch, sit up (with a person, at night)".
7. **Jeg står opp**, "I get up", literally "I stand up". Å stå is used in many senses, some of which are illustrated in the following sentences:

Han må venne seg til å stå på egne ben, He must get used to being independent.

Jeg kan ikke si Dem det på stående fot, I can't tell you off-hand.

Maten står på bordet, The food is on the table.

Pengene står i banken, The money is in the bank.

Det sto noe om ulykken i avisen, There was something about the accident in the newspaper.

Solen står opp i øst og går ned i vest, The sun rises in the east and sets in the west.

Det er du som står for tur, It's your turn next.

Han sto til eksamen, He passed the examination.

See also Lesson 5, §6, and Introduction II, §3.

3. **Tufler**, "slippers". Note the expression å være tøffelhelt, "to be henpecked", literally "to be a hero of the slipper".
9. **Min kones**, "my wife's". This example of the absolute genitive is comparable to the use of the possessive case in English, the only difference being that the apostrophe is not used in Norwegian. Compare:

Det er ikke min bil, men min brors, It is not my car, but my brother's.

10. **Tøy**, "clothes". Tøy (n.) means both "material" (e.g. bomullstøy, "cotton material") and "clothes". The meaning "clothes" occurs particularly in compounds:

vintertøy, winter clothes

yttertøy, coats, etc.; *literally* outer clothes

regntøy, rainwear

undertøy, underwear

skinnstøy, fur(s).

Note that the suffix -tøy also occurs in a number of neuter nouns that have nothing to do with fabrics:

leketøy, toy(s)

sukkertøy, boiled sweets

verktøy, tools.

## Leksjon 14

### MORGEN OG AFTEN

1. **Når pleier du å stå opp?** "When do you usually get up?" Å pleie å has the meaning "to be in the habit of (doing something)", but is frequently translated into English by a phrase introducing "usually", especially in the present tense, as in this example from the text

Compare:

Mens han bodde i Oslo, pleide han å spise middag ute, While he was living in Oslo he used to have dinner out.

Note the following expressions for the same idea:

Han brukte å komme tidsnok, He was usually on time, He used to arrive on time.

Han kommer som regel for sent, He is usually late, *literally* He comes as (a) rule too late.

Det er som oftest vanskelig å få kinobilletter en lørdag kveld, It is usually (most often) difficult to get cinema tickets on Saturday nights.

2. **Jo, jeg må**, "well, I must". As we have seen, jo is used first and foremost in affirmative sentences, in reply to a negative question:

Kommer han ikke? Jo, Isn't he coming? Yes.

A second function of jo is as a sentence modifier:

Det var jo ikke hans feil, It wasn't his fault, after all.

In jo, jeg må reise, however, the adverb jo has a third function, that namely of summing up the question, and thus saving a repetition. Jo here stands for jeg må stå opp så tidlig fordi . . ., "I have to get up as early as that, because . . ."

3. **Jeg må reise med et tidlig tog**, "I have to travel by an early train". One can also say: Jeg må ta et tidlig tog, "I have to catch an early train". Compare:

Vi rakk såvidt toget, We only just caught the train, *literally* We reached just the train.

Vi kom for sent til toget, We missed the train, *literally* We came too late to the train.

(14)

4. **For det meste**, "for the most (part)", "most of the time". The superlative is here used as a noun. Note also: **det meste av tiden**, "most of the time". Similarly, **de fleste**, "most (of the) people".
5. **Av og til**, "off and on", "now and then". Note also the idiomatic expressions:
- nå og da**, now and again  
**rett som det er**, (1) every now and then; (2) all of a sudden  
**fra tid til annen**, from time to time  
**i ett kjør**, continuously.
6. **Vi går på kino**, "We go to the pictures". Note that Norwegian does not use the definite article. On the other hand, Norwegian uses the definite article in:
- å gå på skolen**, to go to school  
**å gå i kirken**, to go to church.
7. **I går aftes**, "last night". The genitive is used in a few expressions of time:
- i dag morges**, this morning  
**i går morges**, yesterday morning  
**i forgårs**, the day before yesterday.
- But:
- i går kveld**, last night.
- Note especially the distinction between **aften** or **kveld**, meaning "before midnight", and **natt**, meaning "after midnight". When you break up from a party, you say **takk for i kveld**, or **takk for i aftes**.
8. **Hadde du tenkt å gjøre . . . ?** "Had you thought of doing . . . ?" Note the use of the infinitive where in English we should have the gerund, i.e. the verbal form in *-ing*. Note especially that in Norwegian the infinitive is used after a preposition, where English uses the gerund:
- De gikk uten å se det**, They left without seeing it.  
**Har du anledning til å gå dit?** Is it possible for you to go there?  
**Jeg er meget glad i å lese**, I am very fond of reading.  
**Min sønn er flink til å tegne**, My son is good at drawing.
9. **Bryllupsdag**, "wedding day". The first element in compound nouns is frequently a genitive. In such compounds, older genitive endings have occasionally survived in the reduced form of *-e*:
- brudedefølge** (n.), bridal procession  
**sønnesønn** (c.), grandson  
**barnebarn** (n.), grandchild  
**landevei** (c.), country road  
**fiskesuppe** (c.), fish soup.

(14)

10. **Må jeg få lov å gratulere**, "congratulations" or "allow me to congratulate you", literally "may I have permission to congratulate". One also says **får jeg lov å gratulere**, or simply **gratulerer**. The Norwegian for "Many happy returns of the day" is **Gratulerer med dagen**.
11. **Hvis det passer**, "if it is convenient". Norwegian has two words for English "if", **hvis** and **om**. **Om** is used to turn a direct question into an indirect one:
- Han spurte om jeg ville komme**, He asked if I would come.  
(His direct question was **Vil du komme?**)
- Hvis** cannot be used in this way, but is restricted to expressing a condition or clause:
- Jeg skal komme hvis det blir pent vær**, I shall come if the weather turns out nice.
- Om**, on the other hand, though less common, can also be used with this latter function:
- Jeg skal komme om det blir pent vær**.
12. **Omkring klokken åtte**, "about eight o'clock". Expressions for the same using other prepositions are **ved** (or **i**) **åttetiden** (see also beginning of this lesson), **cirka åtte** (often shortened to **ca. åtte**). Rough indications are also often given by mentioning two figures:
- Kom i åtte-halv nitiden**, Come about eight or half past.
- Note especially:
- Vi var en sju-åtte stykker**, We were seven or eight people, i.e. There were seven or eight of us.  
**Vi skal bli der en ti-tolv dager**, We are going to stay for some ten days.  
**Det var en førti-femti mennesker i salen**, There were some forty or fifty people in the hall.
- Expressions of the form "at . . ." (*naming the time precisely*) are rendered in Norwegian *without* a preposition; thus
- Hun kommer klokken seks**, She is coming at six o'clock.  
**Forestillingen begynte ti over åtte**, The performance started at ten past eight.

## Leksjon 15

### HOTELLET

1. **Det finnes gode hoteller**, "There are (to be found) good hotels". **Finnes** is, historically, the present tense in the passive voice of **å finne**, "to find". The infinitive **å finnes** has, however, acquired an autonomous status, meaning "to be, to be found, to exist", and **det finnes** is equivalent to "there is" or "there are". Compare §63 in the *Appendix*.
2. **Som oftest ligner de hverandre**, "As a rule they are alike", ". . . they are like each other". **Hverandre** is a reciprocal pronoun, meaning "each other", "one another". See *Appendix*, §59.
3. **En mengde reisende**, "a large number of travellers", "a lot of travellers". The noun **mengde** is derived from the adjective **mange**, many. **Reisende** is the present participle of the verb **å reise**, "to travel". The present participle is used here as a noun. For other uses of the present participle consult *Appendix*, §65.
4. **Så tar De heisen**, "Then you take the lift". Note the idiomatic expression **å komme i heisen**, "to get into trouble":  

Hvis man kjører bil i Norge når man har drukket alkohol, kan man lett komme i heisen, If you drive a car in Norway when you have had alcohol, you may easily get into trouble.
5. **En guide**, "a guide". Note that Norwegian uses the English pronunciation of this loan-word. There is also a Norwegian word, **en reisefører**, and for a guide in a particular place, **en omviser**.

## Leksjon 16

### VI BESTILLER HOTELLROM

1. **Nå er vi fremme**, "Now we are there". Compare the short form **frem** or **fram**, implying direction:  

Vi kjørte frem til huset, We drove up to the house.
2. **Der står jo**, "there it says", literally "there stands". Where English uses "say" referring to printed information, Norwegian uses **stå**:  

Hva står det på skiltet? What does the sign(board) say?  
 Det står her i boken . . . , It says here in the book . . .
3. **Vent med å betale**, "don't pay", literally "wait with paying". Here we have a further instance of the use of an infinitive after a preposition (see Lesson 14, §8). Note also:  

Jeg gleder meg til å reise, I am looking forward to going.
4. **Kan jeg få**, "may I have". This is the usual way of expressing your requests in shops, restaurants, hotels, etc.
5. **Om De ikke har det**, "if you haven't got that". **Om** is here used in a conditional clause, where **hvis** could equally well have been used. Compare above, **til jeg vet om de har noen ledige rom**, where **om** has to be used since we have here an indirect question. (The direct question would be: **Har De noen ledige rom?**) See Lesson 14, §11.
6. **Fullt belagt**, "full up". Note that the double consonant is kept in this case, to avoid confusion with **fult**, from **ful**, "sly, cunning".
7. **Hvor lenge har herrene tenkt å bli?** "How long do you intend to stay?" The use of a noun (here **herrene**) instead of the personal pronoun **De**, when addressing people, is very restricted in Norwegian. When used at all, it is used by people in a subordinate position, especially to clients in shops and restaurants.
8. **Jeg skulle tro**, "I should think". **Jeg skulle tro** implies uncertainty. Compare on the other hand **Jeg skulle mene det!** "Rather!", "Yes, of course".
9. **Nei, det er den ikke**, "No, it is not". The demonstrative pronoun **det** has no equivalent in English here.

(16)

10. **Da må jeg be**, "then I must ask". **Da** is here an adverb, hence the inversion of subject and finite verb. But **da** can also be a causal conjunction meaning "since", or it can be a temporal conjunction, meaning "when" and used about a single occurrence in the past. In these cases there is no inversion:

**Da alle billettene var utsolgt, kom vi ikke inn**, Since all the tickets were sold, we did not get in.

**Da vi kom til teatret, var alle billettene utsolgt**, When we got to the theatre, all the tickets were sold.

If "when" indicates something habitual, that is, if it is equivalent to "whenever", **når** must be used:

**Når de reiste på landet, tok de alltid med seg hunden**, When (= whenever) they went into the country, they always took the dog with them.

11. **Yrke**, "profession". The word **yrke** is much wider in its connotation than the English word "profession", and comprises any occupation (craft, trade, work, livelihood, etc.) by which a man earns his living. Compare:

**yrkeskvinne** (c.), a working woman, i.e. any woman who works for a living.

**yrkesopplæring** (c.), specialized training for a profession or occupation.

**bondeyrket**, farming.

**yrkesbefal** (n.), officer by profession, regular officer.

**yrkesnevrose** (c.), occupational neurosis.

## Leksjon 17

### PÅ RESTAURANT

1. **Sytten**, "seventeen", **syttende**, "seventeenth". Notice that the letter **y** in these numerals is pronounced **ø** as also in **sytti**, **syttiende**, "seventy, seventieth". The orthography reflects the old form of the numeral "seven", **syv**, which is still used by many speakers. The forms **sju**, **sjuende**, are, however, rapidly gaining ground. Note the rather strange use of **syttén** as a mild swear-word:

**Det var som bare syttén**, What a nuisance!

2. **I alle større byer**, "in all (the) larger towns". The comparative is used absolutely, without any real comparison being made. It is the same in English, except that here the definite article is often added. (See Appendix, § 41.)
3. **Kafeer**, "cafés". In polysyllabic words an accent is used to indicate that a final **-e** is stressed: **kafé**; **armé** (c.), "army"; **idé** (c.), "idea". This accent is always kept in compounds: **kafégjest** (c.), "café customer"; **idéassosiasjon** (c.), "association of ideas". When the definite article is added, however, the accent is sometimes left out: **arméen** or **armeen**, "the army"; **idéene** or **ideene**, "the ideas".
4. **Til bords**, "at table". One of the many cases where the preposition **til** governs a noun in the genitive. Compare Lesson 12, § 1.
5. **Middag**, "dinner", literally "midday". Despite the name, most townspeople nowadays take their **middag** in the late afternoon, and usually refer to the lighter midday meal as **lunsj** (c.). In the rural districts, however, the main meal is still **middag** in the proper sense of the word, since it is taken about 1 p.m. The other main meals are **frokost** (c.), "breakfast", and **aftens** (c.), "supper".
6. **En rekke forskjellige kalde retter**, "a number of (literally, a row of) various cold dishes". Note that Norwegian uses no preposition corresponding to the English "of" in expressions of quantity:

**en kilo kaffe**, a kilogram of coffee  
**en pakke te**, a packet of tea  
**en flaske øl**, a bottle of beer  
**en liter melk**, a litre of milk.



(17)

7. Ved fem-sekstiden, "about 5 or 6". See Lesson 9, §12, and Lesson 14, §12.
8. Pålegg, has the sense of "things for laying on", viz. on bread. The word pålegg covers everything used for making open sandwiches: ost (c.), "cheese", kjøttpålegg (n.), "cooked meats", egg (n.), "eggs", sardiner (c.), "sardines", grønnsaker (c.), "vegetables", and innumerable other items.

## Leksjon 18

### VI BESTILLER MIDDAG

1. Der borte, "over there". Note also the other meanings of borte: "gone out, away, gone", e.g.:  
Vi var borte i går kveld, We were out last night.  
Han er borte på ferie, He is away on holiday.  
Jeg hadde satt fra meg vesken på benken, og da jeg kom tilbake, var den borte, I had left my brief-case on the seat, and when I got back it was gone.  
Note the idiomatic use of borte in the expression Han er ikke borte, "He is no fool; He is very clever".  
The corresponding adverb bort implies movement:  
Han kom bort til meg, He came up to me.  
Note especially: Vi gikk oss bort, We lost our way.
2. Vær så god, "Here you are". Vær så god means, literally, "be so kind", and is used when you offer a service of any kind. It is the standard formula for waiters, shop assistants, etc., and covers the English: "Here you are", "Can I help you?", "After you", "Please" (Vær så god neste, "Next (one) please").
3. Hva skal det være? "What would you like?", literally "What shall it be?" This is a standard expression used by shop assistants, etc. Note that the guest in the following line addresses Kari in a much more personal way: Hva skal du ha?, also meaning "What would you like?"
4. Ikke noe særlig sulten, "not particularly hungry". Less colloquial is ikke særlig:  
Det er ikke særlig sannsynlig, It is not very likely.
5. Avkokt laks, "steamed salmon". Avkokt is an adjective restricted in practice to menus, and implies quick and careful boiling. Å koke means "to boil", but may also be rendered "to make", e.g.:  
kokte poteter, boiled potatoes  
kokende vann, boiling water  
å koke grøt, to make porridge.  
"To cook" is in Norwegian å lage:  
Han er flink til å lage mat, He is a good cook, literally He is good at preparing food.  
Note the idiomatic en glad laks, "a happy-go-lucky fellow".



(18)

6. **Det tar jeg**, "I'll (= I will) take that". By placing the object **det** at the head of the sentence, one gives it added emphasis compared with the normal word-order **Jeg tar det**. Note also the use of the simple present tense in Norwegian where in English we use "will", followed by the infinitive.
7. **Litt kjøtt**, "a little meat". Note that Norwegian uses no indefinite article with **litt**:

**Jeg har litt vondt i hodet**, I have a slight headache.

**Jeg er litt sent ute**, I am a little late.

**Det var litt vanskelig å finne veien**, It was a little difficult to find the way.

## Leksjon 19

### KLOKKESLETT OG DATO

1. **Klokkeslett**, "hour, time", literally "the striking of the clock". Compare **å slå**, "to strike, to hit".
2. **Utenlands**, "abroad". The adverb **utenlands** is, historically speaking, the preposition **uten** plus the genitive in -s of the noun **land**, the two together meaning "outside the country". Compare **innenlands**, "within the country". The corresponding adjectives are **utenlandsk** and **innenlandsk**, e.g.: **utenlandske aviser**, "foreign newspapers", **innenlandske brev**, "inland letters".
3. **Hvor mange er klokken?** "What's the time?", literally "How many (hours) is the clock?" On the whole **klokke** corresponds to "clock" and **ur** (n.) to "watch". **Klokke** is, however, also very common in the meaning "watch", especially when referring to "pocket-watches". Note that **vekkerur** and **vekkerklokke** are used interchangeably for "alarm-clock", whereas "church clock" is **kirkeur**—not **kirkeklokke**, which means "church bell".
4. **Klokken er ett**, "It's one o'clock". Note that the numeral **ett**, "one", which is the neuter of **en**, is spelt with a double t, as distinct from the neuter indefinite article **et**:  

**Etter brannen sto bare ett hus igjen**, After the fire only one house remained.
5. **Uttrykkes**, "are expressed". **Uttrykkes** is the present tense in the passive voice of **å uttrykke**. Note the active voice a little further down: **Minuttene uttrykker man**, "one indicates the minutes". Passive s-verbs are dealt with in the *Appendix*, §63.
6. **Halv to (1,30)**. Generally speaking Norwegian uses a comma in figures where English has a full stop, and vice versa. Thus, in all the times mentioned in this lesson, the number of hours is separated from the minutes by a comma. Similarly, the decimal point is replaced by a comma, 3.8 becoming 3,8 (spoken as **tre komma åtte**). On the other hand the number 2,688,942 becomes, in Norwegian, 2.688.942.
7. **Kvarterene**, "the quarters". The full form is **et kvarter**, but a shortened form, **kvart**, is often used to indicate time: **kvart over ett**. Note **kvartal** (n.), "quarter (of a year)", and **kvartrull** (c.) "twist (of chewing tobacco)". The king **Christian den fjerde** (1577–1648) is sometimes referred to as **Christian kvart**.

8. **Tjuefire**, "twenty-four". The system of counting represented by **tjuefire**, the "English" system, was introduced in Norway by law in 1951. Before that time, figures from 21 to 99 were expressed by putting the smallest unit first: **niognitti**, "nine and ninety" (the "German" system, *neunundneunzig*).  
A change like this will, of course, take a long time to become firmly established, and you must be prepared to hear the two systems used side by side.  
In 1951, the forms **sju**, "seven", and **tjue**, "twenty", were made obligatory, instead of the older forms **syv** and **tyve**. Here, too, the old forms live on side by side with the officially prescribed forms. If you prefer to use the forms **syv**, **tyve**, then you ought to keep to the "German" system: **syvogtyve**, "twenty-seven". If you prefer **sju**, **tjue**, then you ought to use the "English" system: **tjuesju**. **Sjuogtjue** is, however, used by many speakers.
9. **Står det altså i togtabellen**, "if therefore it says in the train time table". The adverb **altså**, "therefore, consequently", is used to indicate a conclusion, and is synonymous with **derfor**, **følgelig**.
10. **Haakon VII**. The letter **å** was introduced in the spelling reform of 1917, instead of the older spelling **aa**. The old spelling with **aa** is, however, kept in some names, especially personal names.  
Ordinals attached to names are rendered by Roman figures, as in English. Ordinals in connection with dates are rendered by ordinary figures, followed by a full stop: **den 12. mai**, "12th May". In writing the date on a document, for instance, or a letter, the article **den** is omitted.
11. **Var født . . . er født**, "was born". In Norwegian, the past tense is used when speaking of a person who is dead, whereas the present tense is used about a person who is still alive. One can, however, use the verb **å bli**, which applies in both cases:

**Haakon VII ble født den 3. august 1872.**  
**Min søster ble født den 12. mai 1941.**

## Leksjon 20

### DAGER OG MÅNEDER. TIDEN

1. **Tiden**, "time", used in a general sense, takes the definite article in Norwegian: **Tiden går**, time flies; **nå for tiden**, nowadays.
2. **Søndag**, . . ., "Sunday, . . .". Note that the days of the week, the months, and the religious festivals, **jul** (c.), "Christmas", **påske** (c.), "Easter" and **pinse** (c.), "Whitsun", do not take initial capital letters in Norwegian.  
**Tirsdag**, **onsdag**, **torsdag** and **fredag** are named after the heathen gods **Ty**, **Odin**, **Tor** and the goddess **Freia** respectively. **Søndag** and **mandag** are named after the sun and the moon, whereas **lørdag** means the bathing day. Compare **laug** (n.), "bath", and **å lauge seg**, "to (take a) bath".
3. **I forgårs**, "the day before yesterday". See Lesson 14, §7.
4. **Gratulerer!**, "(I) congratulate (you)". Note that Norwegian omits both the personal pronoun subject and the object pronoun in a direct congratulation. Equally common is an extended version: **Gratulerer med dagen!** "(I) congratulate (you) on the occasion". **Gratulerer (med dagen)** corresponds to "Many happy returns", just as the song **Ja, han skal leve**, "Yes, may he live", corresponds to the English "He's a jolly good fellow".  
On a card or in a telegram you can use any of the following expressions when sending good wishes for a particular occasion, not necessarily a birthday:

**Gratulerer med dagen!**

**Hjertelig til lykke med dagen!**, *literally* Heartily for luck with the day.

**Mine beste ønsker for dagen!** My best wishes for the day.

5. **Vær så vennlig**, "be so good". This phrase is the usual one when asking a favour, just as **vær så god** is the usual one when offering a service.
6. **Går . . . for sakte**, "is . . . slow". Compare **går for fort**, "is fast", and note that, with clocks and watches, Norwegian uses the verb **å gå** where English has "to be". Note also the verbs **å sakte**, "to lose", and **å fortne**, "to gain":  
**Dette armbåndsuret saktner to minutter i døgnet**, This wrist-watch loses two minutes in 24 hours.

(20)

7. **Urmaker**, "watchmaker". The suffix **-maker**, meaning "producer (of)", is still used in a few words: **hattemaker**, "hatter", **hjulmaker**, "wheel-wright", **salmaker**, "saddlemaker", **skomaker**, "shoemaker". Note also **pratmaker**, "chatterbox", literally "prattle-maker".

I had some money in my pocket, but I have lost it (literally, them).

Note also **papirpenger**, "notes", **småpenger**, "small change" and **kassanter**, "cash".

8. I det vekskeløstet, "at the exchange office". After the demonstrative adjective **det** (den, de) the noun may or may not take the suffixed definite article. See Appendix, §10.

9. Vil man ha . . . "if one wants (to have) . . ." Conditional clauses introduced by **hvis** or **om** were referred to in Lesson 14, §11. In such clauses it is possible to omit the word for "if", but then there is inversion of subject and verb, as in this example from the text. We have a similar construction in English, e.g. "Had I seen him . . ." for "If I had seen him . . ."

10. **Nærmere opplysninger**, "further information", literally "closer information". **Nærmere** is the comparative of **near**, "close". Note that Norwegian uses the plural **opplysninger**, literally, "enlightenments", where English uses the singular "information". The singular **en opplysning** means "a piece of information".

11. **Gå inn i forretningsen**, "go into the shop". **Gå** implies moving under one's own power, and is used about people as well as mechanical devices:

Vi gikk en lang tur. We went for a long walk.

Bilen går godt. The car goes (runs) well.

Note especially:

Veien gikk ikke lenger. The road didn't go any further.

Filmen har gått i 13 uker. The film has run for 13 weeks.

Den går ikke! You can't fool me!

Remember that when English "go" means "travel", you cannot use the Norwegian **gå**.

Han reiste til Oslo. He went to Oslo.

De gikk. They went by car.

De gikk med fly. They went by plane.

12. **Damestrømsuret**, "the lady's wrist-watch". This is a good example of the case with which Norwegian forms compounds: **dame**, "lady"; **arm**, "arm"; **bånd**, "band, ribbon", the genitive case ending **-s**; and **ur**, "watch".

13. **Til 300 kroner**, "at 300 kroner". **Til** indicates "priced at"; **for** indicates the price paid:

Jeg kjøpte uret for 300 kroner. I bought the watch for 300 kroner.

## Leksjon 21

### NORSK MYNT

1. **Myntvesen**, "monetary system". The word **vesen** (n.) has a number of meanings, often vague and difficult to define:

**Ingen menneskelige vesener hadde noensinne vært der**, No human beings had ever been there.

**De gjorde stort vesen av henne**, They made a great fuss of her.

**Han har et meget behagelig vesen**, He has a very pleasant manner.

**Nazismen og hele dens vesen**, Nazism and all it stood for.

**Ibsen kjente teatrets innerste vesen**, Ibsen knew the innermost soul of the theatre.

As a second element in compounds, the noun **vesen** means "institution, organization, system"; **skolevesen**, "educational system"; **veivesen**, "road authorities"; **rettsvesen**, "system of justice"; **havnevesen**, "harbour authorities".

Note also **vesensforskjellig**, "fundamentally different", and **vesentlig**, "in the main, considerably":

**Moderne reiseliv er vesensforskjellig fra reiselivet i det 19. århundre**, Modern travel is fundamentally different from that of the 19th century.

**Husleien ligger vesentlig høyere i byene enn på landet**, Rents are (literally The rent is) considerably higher in the towns than in the rural districts.

2. **Bygger på**, "is based on", literally "builds on". Note that the Norwegian expression here is active, while the English equivalent is passive. One can also use the passive: **er bygd på**.

3. **Jernpenger finnes på 1, 2 . . . øre**, "There are 1, 2 . . . øre coins". Note the use of the preposition **på** in connection with coins and notes: **en sølvmynt på 25 øre**, "a 25-øre silver coin"; **en seddel på 10 kroner**, "a 10-krone note".

**Kroner** is shortened **kr.**, and is placed before the figure: **kr. 55,-**. The remaining **øre** are placed after a comma: **kr. 51,35**. See also Lesson 19, §6.

4. **Halvkroner**, "sixpence", is equivalent to **50 øre**, which is the term more often used for the coin; the sum is written **en halv krone**. Note the use of the singular where a sum ends in **en halv krone**: **fem og en halv krone**, i.e. "five and a half 'crown'" (not "crowns").

(21)

5. **Utenlandske penger**, "foreign currency". **Penger** is also the word for "money". Note that it is a word in the plural, and therefore any words referring to it must also be plural:  
Jeg hadde noen (pl.) penger i lommen, men jeg har mistet dem,  
I had some money in my pocket, but I have lost it (*literally*, them).
- Note also **papirpenger**, "notes", **småpenger**, "small change" and **kontanter**, "cash".
6. **I det vekslekontor**, "at the exchange office". After the demonstrative adjective **det** (**den**, **de**) the noun may or may not take the suffixed definite article. See *Appendix*, §10.
7. **Vil man ha . . .**, "if one wants (to have) . . ." Conditional clauses introduced by **hvis** or **om** were referred to in Lesson 14, §11. In such clauses it is possible to omit the word for "if", but then there is inversion of subject and verb, as in this example from the text. We have a similar construction in English, e.g.: "Had you seen him . . ." for "if you had seen him".
8. **Nærmere opplysninger**, "further information", literally "closer information". **Nærmere** is the irregular comparative of **nær**, "close". Note that Norwegian uses the plural **opplysninger**, literally, "enlightenments", where English uses the singular "information". The singular **en opplysning** means "a piece of information".
9. **Gå inn i forretningen**, "go into the shop". **Gå** implies moving under one's own power, and is used about people as well as mechanical devices:  
Vi gikk en lang tur, We went for a long walk.  
Bilen går godt, The car goes (runs) well.  
Note especially:  
Veien gikk ikke lenger, The road didn't go any further.  
Filmen har gått i 13 uker, The film has run for 13 weeks.  
Den går ikke! You can't fool me!  
Remember that when English "go" means "travel", you cannot use the Norwegian **gå**:  
Han reiste til Oslo, He went to Oslo.  
De bilte, They went by car.  
De reiste med fly, They went by 'plane.
10. **Damearmbåndsuret**, "the lady's wrist-watch". This is a good example of the ease with which Norwegian forms compounds: **dame**, "lady"; **arm**, "arm"; **bånd**, "band, ribbon", the genitive case ending **-s**, and **ur**, "watch".
11. **Til 300 kroner**, "at 300 kroner". **Til** indicates "priced at"; **for** indicates the price paid:  
Jeg kjøpte uret for 300 kroner, I bought the watch for 300 kroner.

## Leksjon 22

### I BANKEN

1. **Kan jeg få vekslet noen utenlandske penger her?** "Can I get some foreign money changed here?" The construction with a past participle after **få**, as here, indicates that the action will result in a change in the future:  
Han vil få utbetalt pengene, He will have the money paid out to him.  
Kan jeg få kjøpt sigaretter her? Can I buy cigarettes here?  
The expression can also be constructed with an infinitive. This construction is used when there is no such change taking place:  
Kan jeg få låne telefonen? May I use (*literally* borrow) the telephone?
2. **Francs . . . dollar . . . mark**. Like **dollar** and **mark**, **franc** can also remain unchanged in the indefinite plural: **ti franc**. Note that pound is rendered **pund** (n.).
3. **Pengene utbetales**, "The money is paid out". Instead of using the passive voice of **å utbetale**, one can equally well say: **De får pengene i kassen**, "You'll get the money at the cash desk".
4. **Tiere og femmere**, "tens and fives". The numerals 1 to 10 form nouns by adding **-(e)r** in the singular, **-(e)re** in the plural. Apart from **femmere** and **tiere** used for bank notes, it is mostly in connection with cards that these nouns are used. Remember that the Norwegian **femmer** is a humble note compared with the British "five", the five-pound note.
5. **Sette pengene inn**, "deposit the money". The opposite is **å ta ut penger**, "to withdraw money". The money deposited at the bank is **et bankinnskudd**.
6. **Luke**, literally "opening", here "position".
7. **Mitt navn er Henriksen**, "My name is Henriksen". This is the usual way of giving one's name in formal circumstances. When you talk about others, you use the verb **å hete**, "to be called": **Han heter Henriksen**, "His name is (he is called) Henriksen". You would also use **å hete** when introducing yourself very informally, e.g. to a child: **Jeg heter Hans, og hva heter du?** "My name is Hans, and what is yours?"



(22)

8. Til å begynne med, "to begin with". In Norwegian, unlike English, a preposition can be followed by an infinitive:

Jeg gleder meg til å reise, I am looking forward to going.

Note especially the expression for å, which corresponds to English "to", meaning "in order to":

De kom for å hente bilen, They came (in order) to collect the car.

9. Greier det seg? "Will that do?" The reflexive å greie seg means "to suffice, to manage":

Det greier seg med to flasker vin, Two bottles of wine will be sufficient.

Han greier seg alene, He manages on his own.

"To manage", in the sense of being able to do something, to succeed in doing something, is the non-reflexive verb å greie, e.g.:

Hun har ikke greidd å gjøre det, She hasn't managed to do it; she hasn't succeeded in doing it.

## Leksjon 23

### POSTKONTORET

1. Man kan bare legge dem, "one can just put them". Å legge means "to place", normally of things that, when placed, are lying down, e.g.:

Hun la blomstene på bordet, She put the flowers on the table.  
(They were then *lying* on the table.)

For things that, when placed, are *standing up*, å sette is used, e.g.:

Hun satte blomstene på bordet, She put the flowers on the table  
(implying, in a vase). (The vase of flowers was then *standing* on the table.)

2. Det haster, "it is urgent". Note that Norwegian expresses this verbally, where English uses an adjective or a noun:

Det haster ikke, It is not urgent; There is no hurry.

Note: Han har hastverk, "He is in a hurry".

3. Fly (n.), "plane", short for flygemaskin (c.), literally "flying-machine". Compare the shortened forms bil (c.), "car", trikk (c.), "tram"; kino (c.), "cinema"; and buss (c.), "bus".

4. Postbud (n.), "postman". Bud means "messenger", and is one of the rare neuter nouns for a person. Note the idiomatic å være tørst som et bybud, "to be very thirsty", literally "to be as thirsty as a town messenger".

5. Det skjer, "that is done". Å skje means "to happen, to take place":

Hvordan skjedde ulykken? How did the accident happen?

Skje din vilje, Thy will be done.

Gudskjelov, Thank goodness, *literally* God be praised.

Kanskje, Perhaps, *literally* May happen.

6. Publikum (n.), "the public", "people". Publikum means people in general, but can also be used in a restricted sense, about people present at any particular function:

Publikum klappet vilt, The audience applauded wildly.

Note also: Stykket ble en stor publikumssuksess, The play was a great box-office success.



(23)

7. **Ekspedisjon**, here "service", also "expedition". **Å ekspedere**, "to serve, to attend"; **en ekspeditør**, "a male attendant", **en ekspeditrise**, "a female attendant". **Ekspedisjon** can also mean "despatch, forwarding", and the verb **å ekspedere**, "to despatch, forward", e.g.:

Jeg har ekspedert reisegodset, I have despatched the luggage.

8. **Postgiro**, a system for transferring money by post, introduced in Norway in 1943, and operating in all four Scandinavian countries as well as in many other continental countries. When establishing a **postgiro** account, one is given a **postgiro** number, and can transfer money to other **postgiro** accounts by means of **girokort** (n.), "transfer cards", and to others by means of **utbetalingskort**, "pay-out cards". Money can be paid into a **postgiro** account by anybody by means of **innbetalingskort**, "pay-in cards". Such **innbetalingskort** are used to a large extent by Norwegian institutions, so that charges, subscriptions, licences, taxes, etc., can be paid at the nearest post office. Many institutions and private firms also use **utbetalingskort** for paying out money. One can cash **utbetalingskort** at the nearest post office, or pay them directly into one's own **postgiro** account.

## Leksjon 24

### PÅ POSTKONTORET

1. **Hvor er nærmeste postkontor?** "Where is the nearest post office?" Note that there is no definite article in the Norwegian. In the same way:

Når går neste tog? When is the next train?

Når går siste tog? When is the last train?

Når går første tog i morgen? When is the first train tomorrow morning?

2. **Jeg er nok fremmed her selv**, "I am afraid I am a stranger here myself". The sentence modifier **nok** expresses an apologetic explanation, giving the sentence a force similar to that of the English "I am afraid" in such contexts. Compare:

Jeg skal kjøre så fort jeg kan, men vi kommer nok for sent, I'll drive as quickly as I can, but we'll be too late, I am afraid.

Note that Norwegian makes use of an adjective, **fremmed**, where English uses a noun, "a stranger".

3. **Kan si Dem det**, "can tell you (that)". Note that if an indirect object is used without a preposition it is always placed before the direct object:

Gi gutten boken, Give the boy the book.

Hun lovt å sende meg den, She promised to send me it.

When a preposition is used, the indirect object is placed after the direct object:

Gi boken til gutten, Give the book to the boy.

Hun lovt å sende den til meg, She promised to send it to me.

4. **Jeg skal den veien selv**, "I am going that way myself". After the auxiliary verb **å skulle** a verb of motion is frequently omitted. (See Appendix, §53.)
5. **Slå følge med**, "join", literally "strike up company with". Note that **å følge** means "to accompany", **å følge etter**, "to follow".

Han fulgte henne hjem, He saw her home.

Note the expression **Takk for følget**, "Thank you for accompanying me".

(24)

6. **Det var meget elskverdig**, "That is very kind (of you)". Note the use of the past tense. See Lesson 10, §3.
7. **Ingen årsak**, "Don't mention it", literally "no reason (to thank me)". A synonymous expression is **Å, jeg ber**, "Oh, I beg (you not to mention it)".  
If the "thank you" is directed to a host or hostess and refers to food or drink, the reply is **Vel bekomme**, "Don't mention it", literally "May it do you good".
8. **Tjue gram**, "twenty grammes". Note that abbreviations for weights and measures take no full stop: **g** = **gram** (n.); **kg** = **kilo** (c.) or **kilogram** (n.), "kilogramme"; **l** = **liter** (c.), "litre"; **m** = **meter** (c.), "metre"; **cm** = **centimeter** (c.), "centimetre"; **dm** = **desimeter** (c.), "decimetre"; **km** = **kilometer** (c.), "kilometre". Note that **meter**, **liter**, **kilo** and **gram** take no ending in the indefinite plural: **to meter**, **fem kilometer**, **tre liter**, **femti gram**.  
Other abbreviations take a full stop:

**bl.a.** = **blant annet**, among other things  
**dvs.** = **det vil si**, that is (to say)  
**el.** = **eller**, or  
**etc.** = **et cetera**  
**f.eks.** = **for eksempel**, for instance  
**jfr.** = **jevnfør**, compare  
**m.m.** = **med mer**, et cetera  
**o.fl.** = **og flere**, and others  
**osv.** = **og så videre**, and so on  
**sml.** = **sammenlign**, compare.

9. **Aerogram**, "air letter". Note that **aerogram** is pronounced as a four-syllable word.

## Leksjon 25

### REISER

1. **Fra det ene kontinent til det andre**, "from one continent to another". Note how the construction deviates from the English one. Norwegians say, literally, "from the one continent to the other".
2. **Man kan reise med moderne fly**, "One can travel in modern aeroplanes". Note that in Norwegian the literal translation is "with modern aeroplanes".  
Similarly: **reise med jernbane**, **med tog**, **med dampskip**, "to go by rail, by train, by steamer".
3. **Plattform nr. 3**, "platform no. 3". The abbreviation **nr.** or the full form **nummer** (n.) is also used in Norwegian to indicate size for things like shirts, shoes and gloves:

Hvilket nummer bruker De? What size do you take?

See Lesson 34, §4.

4. **Noen reisende går av toget, andre går på**, "Some travellers get off the train, others get on". **Gå av**, **gå på** are compound verbs, pronounced by the speaker with the main stress on the prepositions. With many speakers, however, such compound verbs form a tone 2 group with the main stress on the verb. For examples of such tone 2 groups, note especially the following in the recording of Lesson 13: **slår på**; **tar av meg**; **kler av meg**; **tar på meg**; **står opp**; **kler på meg**.
5. **Noen reisende**, "some travellers". **Reisende** is the present participle of the verb **å reise**, "to travel". The present participle is here used as a noun. (See *Appendix*, §65.)
6. **Hvis man ikke kjøper billett**, "if you don't buy a ticket". Note the position of the negative adverb **ikke**. In a subordinate clause it is placed before the finite verb (i.e. in compound tenses before the auxiliary): **Hvis man ikke har kjøpt billett**, "if one has not bought a ticket".  
In a main clause, however, the adverb **ikke** is placed after the finite verb (i.e. in compound tenses after the auxiliary verb, but before the main verb): **Jeg kjøpte ikke billett**, "I did not buy a ticket"; **Jeg har ikke kjøpt billett**, "I have not bought a ticket". These important

(25)

syntactical rules apply to a number of adverbs. The most common ones are:

ikke, not	sjelden, seldom
aldri, never	stadig, constantly
alltid, always	fremdeles, still
ofte, often	nesten, almost.

7. **Stå i kø**, "stand in a queue". Note also **å stille seg i køen**, "to join the queue".
8. **Underholdningslektyre** (c.), "light reading matter", literally "entertainment reading matter". Note also **lesestoff** (n.), "reading matter". Reading matter for a journey is often referred to as **reiselektyre**, literally "travel reading matter". Typical **reiselektyre** are **detektivromaner** (c.), "detective novels", **reisebeskrivelser** (c.), "travel books", **ukeblader** (n.), "weekly magazines" and **aviser** (c.), "newspapers".
9. **Luken for innlevering av reisegods**, "the counter for handing in luggage for despatch". Note also **oppbevaringen** (c.), "the left-luggage office", derived from the verb **å oppbevare**, "to keep, preserve".

## Leksjon 26

### JERNBANESTASJONER

1. **En første klasse**, literally, "one first class". This is an elliptical expression, the word **billett** being understood: **en billett til første klasse**, "one ticket for the first class".
2. **Hurtigtog** (n.), "express train", as opposed to the train that stops at all stations, **lokalto**. You may sometimes have "to change trains", i.e. **å skifte tog**:

**De skifter tog i Drammen**, You change at Drammen.

As many of the railways in Norway are only single-track, your train will occasionally stop at a station for a train in the opposite direction to pass. This is called **å krysse**, literally "to cross".

**Vi krysser på Otta**, We stop at Otta for a train in the opposite direction to pass.

3. **Forlengs**, "facing the engine". Compare **baklengs**, "back to the engine", "backwards":

**Han falt baklengs ut gjennom vinduet**, He fell backwards out of the window.

4. **Hvor skal De? Jeg skal med toget 9,10 . . .**, "Where are you going? I am going by the 9.10 train . . ." Note that the main verb, **reise**, is left out. See *Appendix*, §53.

## Leksjon 27

## MED BÅT OG FLY

1. Fulgte . . . en god venn på bryggen, "saw a good friend off on the quay". For *fulgte*, see Lesson 24, §5.

The noun *venn* is used by both sexes about male and female friends:

Jeg har mange gode venner i Oslo, I have many good friends in Oslo.

Vi besøkte noen venner av oss, We visited some friends of ours.

The noun *venninne* (c.), "girl friend", is first and foremost used about a girl's or lady's female friends:

Etter at hun giftet seg, fikk hun ikke så mye tid til å være sammen med sine gamle venninner, After she got married, she didn't have so much time for being with her old (female) friends.

If a man talks of *en venninne*, he usually means sweetheart:

Soldatene fikk invitere sine venninner til festen, The soldiers were allowed to invite their sweethearts to the party.

Note also: *kjæreste* (c.), "girl's boy friend", or "boy's girl friend", literally "dearest"; *min forlovede*, "my fiancé(e)", or, more colloquially, *forloveden*, "the fiancé(e)"; *å ha fast følge*, "to be courting", "to be going out together", literally "to have fixed company"; *å være forlovet*, "to be engaged"; *å være gift*, "to be married".

2. Anledning til å . . . se seg om, "opportunity to look round". Note the reflexive construction.

Instead of the word *anledning* there is a tendency to use the word *høve* (n.):

Fikk De høve til å tale med ham? Did you have the opportunity of speaking to him?

Har De høve til å komme i morgen? Is it possible for you to come tomorrow?

3. Holdt på å laste, "were (busy) loading". Note the two meanings of the idiomatic expression *å holde på*: (1) to be busy doing something, to be in the act of doing something (equivalent to the English progressive tense); (2) to be on the point of doing something (equivalent to an English verbal phrase with "almost"):

Han holder på å male huset, He is (in the act of) painting the house.

Jeg holdt på å komme for sent, I almost arrived too late.

4. Plutselig tutet båten, "Suddenly the siren sounded", literally "the boat hooted". *Å tute* refers to the sound of a siren, but is also used about crying, howling:

Ungen begynte å stortute, The child began to howl.

5. Slektninger, "relatives". The word is derived from *slekt* (c.), "family", "clan". In Lesson 1 we had the other word for "family", i.e. *familie*. The words *slekt* and *familie* overlap. The latter word is generally used, however, of the members of one's immediate family as in Lesson 1, i.e. mother and father, son(s), daughter(s). *Slektninger* covers a wider field, embracing all the relatives, i.e. uncles and aunts, cousins, etc., whereas *slekt* refers more to the succession of generations:

Nesten alle hennes slektninger kom til bestemors begravelse, Nearly all her relatives came to grandmother's funeral.

Han har en stor familie å forsørge, He has a large family to support.

Gården hadde vært i slekten i flere hundre år, The farm had remained in the family for several hundred years.

6. Ut av syne, "out of sight". The form *syne* is an old dative case of *syn* (n.), "view, sight, vision", governed by the preposition *av*. A few such datives, governed by prepositions, have survived:

Å ta en av dage, to kill somebody, *literally* to take somebody off (away from) the days.

Han satte av gårde, He ran off, *literally* off the farm.

Å snakke i søvne, to talk in one's sleep.

Det er på tide, It is high time.

7. Det gjaldt, "it was important". *Å gjelde* has the two principal meanings: (1) to be urgent, (2) to be valid:

Det gjelder å nytte tiden, It is important to use the time well.

Denne billetten gjelder ikke lenger, This ticket is no longer valid.

Note also:

Han gjaldt for å være rik, He was considered (said to be) rich.

8. Kjempestor, "gigantic, enormous". The noun *kjempe* (c.), "giant", is used as an intensifying prefix in a number of words:

kjempefin, excellent

kjempesterk, very strong

kjempegøy (c.), great fun

kjempetiltak (n.), giant undertaking

kjempeflaks (c.), good luck.



(27)

9. **Klokken 12 presis**, "at exactly 12 o'clock". Note that Norwegian has no preposition corresponding to the English "at".
10. **I rute**, "on time, according to schedule". Note also:

**Toget er forsinket**, The train is late, behind schedule.

**Bussen kom 10 minutter for tidlig**, The bus arrived 10 minutes early, ahead of schedule.

## Leksjon 28

### OMBORD

1. **Hold billettene klare**, "Have your tickets ready". Note that the plural form **klare** agrees with the noun. But it often happens that agreement does not take place with adjectives that are part of idiomatic expressions like **å være glad i**, "to be fond of"; **å være klar til**, "to be ready for"; **å være oppmerksom på**, "to be aware of"; **å være vant til**, "to be used to":

**De var glad i huset sitt**, They were fond of their house.

**Skipet var klar til avgang**, The ship was ready for departure (ready to leave).

**Vi var oppmerksom på saken**, We were aware of the matter.

**De var ikke vant til bylivet**, They were not used to town life.

2. **Jeg vet ikke riktig**, "I am not quite sure". The adverb **riktig**, literally, "rightly", here means "exactly". **Riktig** is also frequently used as an adverb of degree: **Han er riktig syk**, "He is very ill". In this usage, **riktig** is a synonym for **svært**, **meget**. The adjective **riktig** means "correct": **et riktig svar**, "a correct answer".
3. **Sjøsyk**, "seasick". "To be a good sailor" is **å være sjøsterk**, literally "to be sea-strong". Note also: **en landkrabbe**, "a landlubber", literally "a land-crab".
4. **Vi får nok**, "I am sure we'll have". See *Appendix*, §70.
5. **Hvordan det går**, "how things go". Note the expressions **Hvordan går det?** "How are things going?" **Takk, det går bare bra**, "All is going well, thank you".
6. **Har rett**, "are right". Note that Norwegian uses the verb **å ha**. Note also that the opposite, "you are wrong", is in Norwegian **du tar feil**, literally "you take wrongly". **Feil** can be an adjective: **feil adresse**, "wrong address"; an adverb: **å kjøre feil**, "to take the wrong road"; and a noun: **en trykkfeil**, "a misprint", literally "a print-error".
7. **I natt**, "tonight". Remember that **i natt** implies the period between midnight and morning. In cases where "tonight" means before midnight, Norwegians say **i kveld** or **i aften**. Note also that **i natt** is used where English has "last night", referring to the whole night, e.g.: **Jeg sov dårlig i natt**, "I slept badly last night". If "last night" means "the evening of yesterday", then Norwegian has **i går kveld** or **i går aftes**:

**De kom kl. 8 i går kveld**, They arrived at 8 o'clock last night.

(28)

8. **Reiser du mye?** "Do you travel much?" **Mye** and **meget** as adjectives and adverbs can in many cases be used interchangeably. **Meget** is more formal than **mye**.

**Han er meget (or mye) ute og reiser,** He is away travelling much of the time.

**Han var meget (or mye) eldre enn sin kone,** He was much older than his wife.

**Det var ikke mye (or meget) mat i huset,** There wasn't much food in the house.

With adjectives in the positive, only **meget** can be used as an adverb of degree:

**Han var meget syk,** He was very ill.

Note that **Han var mye syk** means "He was frequently ill".

Note also the use of **meget** as a mark in school language: **Han fikk meget i engelsk,** "He got the mark 'meget' for English". **Meget** is here an abbreviation of **meget tilfredsstillende**, "very satisfactory".

9. **Fornøyelse**, "pleasure". Note the expression **med fornøyelse**, "with pleasure":

**Vil De hjelpe meg med denne kofferten? Med fornøyelse,** Will you help me with this suitcase? With pleasure.

Note also **fornøyespark** (c.), fun fair.

10. **Fra det ene til det annet**, "By the way, to change the subject", literally "from one thing to the other". Also: **fra det ene til det andre**. Compare Lesson 25, Note 1.

11. **Pass- og tollkontrollen**, "the passport and customs check". Note the way in which Norwegian joins two compounds when the second element is the same in both:

**Tog- og bussforbindelser**, train and bus connections.

**Norges Handels- og Sjøfartstidende**, (an Oslo newspaper) The Trade and Shipping Times of Norway.

12. **Husker jeg riktig**, "if I remember rightly". A conditional clause can be formed by inversion as well as by a specific conditional conjunction: **Hvis jeg husker riktig**.

13. **Fortolle**, "declare (for customs purposes)". Note also **tollavgift** (c.), "customs duty"; **tollbetjent** (c.), "customs officer"; **tollfri**, "duty free"; **tollpliktig**, "subject to customs duty", "dutiable".

## Leksjon 29

### EN GATE I OSLO

1. **I Oslo**, "in Oslo". The two prepositions used in connection with towns are **i** and **på**. There is no consistent rule, but towns along the coast tend to take the preposition **i**, towns inland **på**:

<b>i Bergen</b>	<b>på Hamar</b>
<b>i Arendal</b>	<b>på Røros</b>
<b>i Drammen</b>	<b>på Kongsberg</b>

In some cases, both prepositions are in use:

**i or på Hønefoss**  
**i or på Moss**

Note also that **i** is usually used about counties and boroughs, and **på** about other names for districts:

**i Akershus** (county)  
**i Ullensaker** (borough)  
**på Østlandet** (Sørlandet, Vestlandet), in Eastern (Southern, Western) Norway

But: **i Nord-Norge**, in Northern Norway.

2. **Forretningsstrøk** (n.), "shopping centre". **Strøk** means "area, district", but is also frequently used in the sense of a "fashionable street". **Å gå på strøket** in Oslo means "to walk along the Karl Johans gate".
3. **Tett i tett**, "close together". Frequency is often indicated through this kind of repetition:

**Strømpene var hull i hull**, The stockings were full of holes.  
**Bil etter bil suste forbi**, Car after car rushed by.  
**gang på gang**, over and over again; time and time again  
**dag for dag**, day by day  
**lag på lag**, layer upon layer

Note also **alt i alt**, "all told".

4. **Fotgjenger** (c.), "pedestrian", literally "foot-walker".
5. **Kjørebane**, "the roadway", as opposed to "the pavement", **fortauet**. **Bane** (c.) means "road, plane, course", and occurs in a number of compounds: **jernbane**, "railway"; **skytebane**, "rifle range"; **løpebane**, "career", literally "running course". Note the colloquial **i lange baner**, "in big quantities". Note also the unrelated word **bane** (c.), "violent death":

**Det ble hans bane**, It was the end of him; It cost him his life.

(29)

6. **Drosjer**, "taxis". Norwegian taxis often have the word **taxi** (c.) on their signs, but **drosje** is the usual word for a taxi:

Jeg skal ringe etter en drosje, I'll ring for a taxi.

7. **De oppmerkede overgangene**, "the marked crossings". **Oppmerkede** is the weak form of the past participle **oppmerket**. Past participles in **-et** take the ending **-ede** when inflected, whereas pure adjectives in **-et** take the ending **-ete**:

saltet, salted—saltede mandler, salted almonds.  
steinet, stony—steinete veier, stony roads.

Note that past participles remain uninflected when used predicatively:

Overgangene er tydelig oppmerket, The crossings are clearly marked.

Mandlene var saltet, The almonds were salted.

8. **Blomstertorv** (n.), "flower market". Officially, only the form **torg** is allowed, but the form used here, **torv**, also frequently occurs.
9. **Året rundt**, "all the year round". Note the following expressions where the preposition is placed after the noun:

dagen etter, the next day

uken før, the preceding week

Han ble der vinteren over, He stayed there for the winter (the winter through).

Note also the idiomatic **dagen derpå** to describe a "hangover", literally, "the day thereupon":

Er det dagen derpå? Have you a hangover?

10. **Hovedgatene**, "the main streets". Compare **hovedstaden**, "the capital"; **hovedsaken**, "the main thing"; **hovedrollen**, "the main part" (in a play); **hovedbryteren**, "the main switch"; **hovedbygningen**, "the main building", and many other compounds.

## Leksjon 30

### HVORDAN MAN SPØR OM VEIEN

1. **Når vi nå står . . .**, "standing as we are now . . ." One can equally well say: **Her vi nå står** or **Som vi nå står**.
2. **Stortinget**, originally the name of the national assembly, but used also of a session of the assembly, and, as here, of the building where the assembly meets.
3. **I høyden**, "at the most", literally "upwards, in the height(s)". Compare **Luften er lettere i høyden enn nede ved sjøen**, "The air is lighter high up than down by the sea". Compare also **høyfjellshotell** (n.), "hotel in the high mountains", and **høyfjellssol** (c.), "sunray lamp".
4. **Et kvarters tid**, "about a quarter of an hour". The genitive when written separately, tends to imply a rough estimate: **om en ukes tid**, "in about a week". Note, however, that compounds with a genitive as a first element imply accuracy: **månedsbillett** (c.), "monthly season (ticket)"; **årskontingent** (c.), "annual subscription".
5. **Nationaltheatret**, "The National Theatre". Note that this theatre, like many other institutions in Norway, observes an obsolete orthography, instead of what would now be the correct spelling: **Nasjonalteatret**.
6. **De kan jo spørre ham**, "why not ask him". The sentence modifier **jo** implies a suggestion.
7. **Som sagt**, an elliptical phrase for **som jeg har sagt før**, "as (I have) said (before)". Note also the expression **som sagt så gjort**, literally "as said so done", used when someone "suits the action to the word".
8. **Vær vennlig og gå lenger inn i vogna**, "Pass down the tram (literally carriage), please". Note the definite article feminine singular, **-a**.
9. **Se opp for dørene**, "Mind the doors", literally "look out for the doors". Note the following expression for warnings:  
Vakt Dem for hunden, Beware of the dog.  
Pass Dem for lommetyver, Beware of pick-pockets.  
Adgang forbudt, No admittance.  
Forstyrr ikke føreren, Don't disturb the driver.
10. **De går den veien**, "You take that direction". **Den** is here the demonstrative pronoun.

## Leksjon 31

### ET BESØK I OSLO

1. **Et besøk i Oslo**, "a visit to Oslo". Note the difference in the preposition. Note also that Norwegians say **å reise til Oslo**, "to go to Oslo".
2. **Vil De**, "if you want". The conditional clause is here indicated through inversion. The conditional conjunction can of course also be used. If there is, as here, an adverbial phrase, it is then placed between the subject and the predicate: **Hvis De under et kortvarig besøk vil se litt av Oslo . . .** See also *Appendix*, §73-74, and Lesson 33, §3.
3. **Herfra**, "from here". A number of adverbs are compounds consisting of a simple adverb with a preposition suffixed:
 

<b>derfra</b> , from there	<b>herfra</b> , from here
<b>dertil</b> , in addition to that	<b>hertil</b> , in addition to this
<b>derav</b> , hence	<b>herav</b> , of this (these)
<b>dermed</b> , with that	<b>hermed</b> , with this
<b>derpå</b> , thereupon	<b>herpå</b> , on this, to this
4. **Nasjonaldagen**, "the national day", is celebrated in memory of the Norwegian Constitution of 17th May 1814.
5. **Kongefamilien hilser barna**, "The royal family greet the children". **Å hilse en**, "to greet somebody", implies formal greeting, as here, or indirect greeting: **Hils din mor**, "Remember me to your mother". For a less formal greeting, **å hilse på en** is used:
 

**Det var hyggelig å hilse på Dem; jeg har hørt så mye om Dem.** It is very nice to meet you; I've heard so much about you.
6. **Som kalles**, "which is called", present tense of **å kalles**, "to be called". (See *Appendix*, §63.)
7. **Stortingsbygningen**, "the parliament building". See also Lesson 30, §2. **Ting** (n.) is an old Norwegian word for "gathering". **Stortinget** therefore means literally "the big gathering". The institution itself is written with a capital letter, **Stortinget**; otherwise, a small letter is used: **en stortingsmann**, "an M.P."; **et stortingsvalg**, "a parliamentary election".

8. **Som nok er verd et besøk**, "which surely is worth a visit". **Nok** is here a sentence modifier, implying assurance or admission. Note also the other meanings of the adverb **nok**:

**Fikk dere nok å spise?** Did you have enough to eat?

**Det gikk nok en dag uten at vi hørte noe,** One more day went by without our hearing anything.

9. **Fins en rekke**, "there are a number". The full form **finnes** can also be used. Similarly in the past tense **fans** and **fantes**.
10. **Ta seg tid til**, "find time to", literally "take time for oneself to". Compare **å se seg råd til**, "be able to afford", literally "to see (for) oneself means to":

**Jeg ser meg ikke råd til å kjøpe bil,** I can't afford to buy a car.

11. **En samling kunst**, "an art collection", "a collection of *objets d'art*". A noun is frequently attached attributively to indicate kind, where English takes a preposition: **en kopp kaffe**, "a cup of coffee". Frequently, however, Norwegian forms a compound, and occasionally a preposition is also used, e.g.:

<b>en samling bøker</b>	}	a collection of books
<b>en boksamling</b>		
<b>en samling av bøker</b>		

12. **En severdighet**, "a sight". Note how the noun is made up of the verb **å se**, "to see"; the adjective **verdig**, "worthy", and the suffix **-het**, "-ness", literally "seeworthiness".



## Leksjon 32

## SEVERDIGHETER

1. **Er det mulig å få sett**, "is it possible to see". The construction with **få** and the past participle implies the end result, the sights *seen* at the end of the sightseeing. Compare the construction with the infinitive which implies possibility in the future, opportunity or permission:  
**Er det mulig å få se Akershus?** Is it possible to have a look at Akershus? (i.e. is it open to the public?)  
 See also Lesson 22, §1.
2. **400 meter over havet**, "400 meters above sea level", frequently shortened to **m.o.h.**  
 Note that in this context **m** for **meter** takes a full stop, whereas there is no full stop for the abbreviation **m** on its own. See Lesson 24, §8.
3. **Utsikt** (c.), "view", or, in a figurative sense, "prospect":  
**Han har utsikt til forfremmelse**, He has a prospect *or* chance of promotion.
4. **Til fots**, "by foot"; one of the many expressions where a genitive is used after the preposition **til**.
5. **Skibakken**, "the ski slope or jump". Note the two meanings of **bakke**: (1) "hill", as here, and (2) "ground": **å sitte på bakken**, "to sit on the ground". Note also the figurative usage in the expression **å komme på bar bakke**, "to be destitute", literally "to arrive on the bare ground".
6. **Holmenkollrennet**, "the Holmenkollen competition". The noun **renn** is derived from the verb **å renne**, "to run", and is used about skiing races or competitions, e.g.: **langrenn**, "long distance race"; **hopprenn**, "jumping competition"; **slalomrenn**, "slalom competition"; **utforrenn**, "downhill race".
7. **Ute på Bygdøy**, "out at Bygdøy". Compare the short form **ut**, implying movement: **Man kommer lett dit ut**, "it is easy to get (out) there".
8. **Farkost** (c.), "craft for transport on water, boat". **Farkost** is derived from the verb **å fare**, "to travel". Compare **fartøy** (n.), "vessel, boat, craft"; **farvann** (n.), "cruising waters, seaway"; **farsott** (c.), "epidemic", literally "travelling disease".

9. **Vigelandsanlegget**, "The Vigeland Park". **Anlegg** (n.) implies something carried out in accordance with a general plan, e.g. a group of houses, a park; **fabrikanlegg**, "factory, industrial plant". Note also **anlegg** meaning "gift, propensity":  
**Han har anlegg for musikk**, He has a (special) gift for music.

10. **Så må De jo besøke**, "then you must of course visit". Note the sentence modifier **jo**, which here means "of course".
11. **Sightseeingbuss** (c.). The English word is generally adopted in Norwegian. The word **turbuss** is also used, although more in the sense of "private coach".

## Leksjon 33

### I STORMAGASINET

1. **I formiddag**, "this morning". Norwegian distinguishes between **i dag morges** or **i dag tidlig**, "(early) this morning", and **i formiddag**, "(later) this morning", i.e. usually between breakfast and noon.
2. **Inne i**, "in, inside". Numerous examples have already occurred of this construction, adverb followed by preposition:  

<b>ut på landet</b> , out into the country	<b>ute på landet</b> , in the country
<b>inn i byen</b> , into the town	<b>inne i byen</b> , in the town
3. **Det var virkelig morsomt**, "It really was amusing". Note the difference in word order. In Norwegian it is only in subordinate clauses that an adverb can be inserted between subject and predicate:  

**Han fortjente virkelig å vinne**, He really deserved to win.  
**Jeg synes at han virkelig fortjente å vinne**, I think he really deserved to win.
4. **Betjeningen**, "the staff". **Betjeningen** is used collectively about the staff serving the public in hotels, restaurants, cafés, etc. Compare **personalet**, which is used collectively about the staff of an office, a bank, a hospital, a library, a school, or some similar institution.
5. **Jeg kunne ikke annet enn beundre**, "I couldn't help admiring", literally "I could not other than admire". There is an expression **jeg kunne ikke hjelpe for . . .**, but it is only used when some sort of apology, however vague, is indicated:  

**Hun kunne ikke hjelpe for sine følelser**, She could not help her feelings.  
**De kunne da ikke hjelpe for at vasen gikk i stykker**, It wasn't *your* fault that the vase was broken; You couldn't help the vase breaking.
6. **Der var avdelinger**, "there were departments". For the adverb **der**, see *Appendix*, §48, *d*.
7. **Venninne** (c.), "female friend, girl friend". Note the pronunciation: **venninde**. Like the speaker on the record, many Norwegians still pronounce the *d* of the pre-1938 spelling, **venninde**.

8. **Hun var gift**, "she was married". **Å være gift**, "to be married", i.e. the *state* of being married, which is the opposite of being single; **å bli gift**, "to get married", i.e. the *action* of going through the wedding ceremony. An alternative expression for the latter is **å gifte seg**, "to marry". When referring to the person who performs the marriage ceremony, "to marry" is **å vie**, e.g.:

**De ble viet av biskopen**, They were married by the bishop.

9. **Hun hadde den eldste gutten sin med seg**, "She had her eldest boy with her". **Sin** and **seg** are used because they refer back to the subject of the sentence. Compare:

**Han var gutten hennes**, He was her son, *literally* boy.

**Han var med henne**, He was with her.

See *Appendix*, §9. Note also the irregular comparison **gammel—eldre—eldst**. See *Appendix*, §38.

10. **Han skulle gå på skole**, "He was to go to school". **Gå på skole**, "to attend school", is used in a general sense, whereas the definite article is usually added where there is a question of a concrete case:

**Olav går på skolen hver dag**, Olav goes to school every day.

11. **Mormor**, "(maternal) grandmother". **Mormor** and **farmor** (paternal grandmother) are often referred to as **bestemor**, literally "best mother". In the same way **morfar** for a mother's father, and **farfar** for a father's father, are referred to as **bestefar**, literally "best father". There is also a much less common way of referring to grandparents, namely as **godmor**, **godfar**, which should not be confused with **gudmor**, "godmother" and **gudfar**, "godfather".
12. **Hvor glade vi var**, "How happy we were". The adjective agrees with the pronoun **vi**, and has the plural form. See, however, Lesson 28, §1.

## Leksjon 34

### SHOPPING

1. **Shopping** (c.). The English word has been adopted in Norwegian also as a verb, **å shoppe**. Most people will, however, still feel it as more correct to say **å gjøre innkjøp**, literally "to do buying". The verbal noun **shopping** can also be rendered as **på innkjøp**, or **vi gjør innkjøp**.

2. **Hva slags skal det være?** "What kind do you want?" **Slags** is the descriptive genitive of **slag** (n.), "kind", and can function both as an adjective and as a common gender and neuter noun:

**Vi har en slags avtale**, We have a kind of (some kind of) agreement.

**Vi har ikke tid til den slags**, We have no time for that sort of thing.

**Det er noe enestående i sitt slags**, It is something unique of its kind.

3. **Fôret**, "lined". The circumflex accent is used in the nouns **fôr** (n.), "lining", and **fôr** (n.), "fodder", to distinguish these nouns from the preposition, conjunction and adverb **for**. The verb also has the circumflex: **å fôre**, "to line; to give fodder (to)".

4. **Hvilket nummer bruker De?** "What size do you take?" Note that **nummer**, literally "number", is used for "size" in connection with articles of clothing.

5. **Synes fru en om disse?** "Does Madam like these?" See Lesson 16, §7.

6. **Utsøkt**, "selected", "first class", "excellent". Note also **søkt**, "far-fetched".

7. **Førtiåtte femti**, "48 (kroner), 50 (øre)". This is the usual way of indicating **kroner** and **øre** when the context makes it clear that money is meant. Compare English "five and six" for 5/6d.

8. **De passer**, "they fit". **Å passe** also means "to suit", "to go well with":

**Denne hatten passer godt til kåpen**, This hat goes well with the coat.

Alternative rendering is **å stå til**:

**Denne hatten står godt til kåpen**.

Note also: **denne hatten kler deg**, This hat suits you.

(34)

9. **Hvordan kjennes de?** "How do they feel?", literally, "How are they felt?" Compare the following examples of the usage of **å kjenne**, "to know", and **å kjennes**, "to feel":

**Kjenner De ham?** Do you know him?

**Jeg kjenner til det**, I know about it.

**Jeg kjente Dem ikke igjen**, I didn't recognize you.

**Det kjentes rart ut**, It felt strange.

**Jeg kjenner det på meg**, I feel it, I have a premonition.

When it is a question of the subjective feeling of a *person* the reflexive **å kjenne seg** is used:

**Han kjente seg dårlig**, He felt ill.

10. **Klemmer**, "pinch". Note **en klem**, "an embrace":

**Han ga henne en ordentlig klem**, He gave her a good hug.

11. **Tærne**, "the toes". Note the irregular plural **en tå, tær**.

## Leksjon 35

### VI KJØPER KLÆR

1. For å bestille ny dress, "to order a new suit". The indefinite article is often left out where there is a question of goods of which one normally buys only one at a time:

Han har kjøpt seg ny bil, He has bought a new car.

See also Lesson 3, §3.

Note the meaning of å bestille, "to do" with regard to occupation:

Jeg vet ikke hva han egentlig bestiller, I don't know what he really does (i.e. what his occupation is).

2. Jeg har ikke råd, "I can't afford". Råd, with the sense of "(the) means" is in this expression invariable, that is, it does not take either the preceding definite article or the following definite article. Compare å ha god råd, "to be well off". Note especially:

Han visste ikke sin arme råd, He saw no way out, was at his wit's end.

Det blir nok en råd, We'll find a way out, something will turn up.

Note that the neuter noun et råd, means "advice, counsel" and also "council":

Nå er gode råd dyre, This is a difficult situation, *literally* Now good advice is expensive.

i statsråd, at the cabinet meeting

Note also en statsråd, "a cabinet minister".

3. Jeg må først få meg ny regnfrakk, "I must first get myself a new rain-coat". Note that in this construction the reflexive pronoun is equivalent to the English pronoun preceded by "for": "get *for* myself". This is known as the *ethic dative*.

The reflexive verb å få seg is used in a number of idioms, e.g.:

Han fikk seg en god latter, He laughed heartily.

Han fikk seg ikke til å be om penger, He couldn't bring himself to ask for money.

4. Jeg har bestemt meg for et . . ., "I have decided on one . . ." Note that the Norwegian equivalent of "to decide" is reflexive. When an infinitive follows, either for or til can be used:

Hun bestemte seg til (or for) å bli, She decided to stay.

(35)

5. Tok mål av meg, "took my measurements", literally "took measure(s) of me". Note the figurative usage:

Jeg tok fort mål av ham, I soon sized him up.

Compare the English expression "to take the measure of a man".

6. Ba meg komme, "asked me to come". See Lesson 9, §5.
7. Om to uker, "in two weeks' time". Note that om can imply (1) future time, as here; (2) during the period of: om sommeren, "in (the) summer"; and (3) on one particular occasion: Om morgenen var han borte, "In the morning (i.e. next morning) he was gone".
8. For å prøve dressen, "to try the suit on", "to have a fitting".
9. Ferdigsydd, "ready made", as opposed to skreddersydd, "tailor made". "Ready-made clothes" are referred to as konfeksjonssøm (c.), or simply as konfeksjon (c.).



## Leksjon 36

### HOS SKREDDEREN

1. Tøyet skal ikke være, "the material is not to be". Skäl here expresses intention or desire; må could be used equally well.
2. Litt for lyst, "a little too light (in colour)". "Light" (in weight) is lett. An extended and more emphatic form of for is altfor, "much too, far too".

Det er altfor elskverdig av Dem, It is much too kind of you.  
Jeg kjenner henne bare altfor godt, I know her only too well.

3. Komme på, "come to". En dress vil komme på ca. ni hundre kroner, "A suit will come to, will cost, about 900 kroner". Note a further meaning of å komme på, "to remember, to recall", with more stress on på:

Jeg kan ikke komme på hva han heter, I can't recall his name.

4. Helull (c.), "pure wool". Compare halvull, a mixture of wool and cotton, and bomull, "cotton".  
Note also the idiomatic expressions:

De er av samme ulla, They are of the same ilk, *literally* they are of the same wool.

Mye skrik og lite ull, The mountain has produced a mouse, *literally* Much crying and little wool; used to express the idea that the end product is small in comparison with the endeavour to bring it about.

5. Jeg hadde tenkt meg, "I had thought". Note the use of the reflexive verb in Norwegian. Compare:

Jeg hadde tenkt meg huset annerledes, I had imagined the house different.

Jeg kunne ikke tenke meg å gjøre det, I wouldn't dream of doing it.

6. Tøyet er vel så godt, "The material is so good, I suppose". (Appendix, §70.)

7. Skäl jeg så få lov, "may I", *literally* "shall I then have permission". This construction is a little more polite than får jeg lov.

8. Det aller siste nye, "the very latest fashion". The adverb *aller* is used to intensify superlatives:

de aller fleste, the great majority  
det aller helligste, the Holy of Holies  
aller helst, preferably  
aller sist, last of all

9. Men farven liker jeg ikke, "but I don't like the colour". The normal word order could also be used here, but the inversion adds force to "the colour". An alternative spelling of farve is farge. Compare torv and torg (Lesson 29).
10. Marineblått, "navy blue". The preposition i is understood, and after this preposition the neuter singular form of the adjective of colours is used, irrespective of the gender of the noun whose colour is described:

en blå kjole, but en kjole i blått  
to grå dresser, but to dresser i grått

Note, however, å spise frokost i det grønne, "to take breakfast in the open", *literally* "in the green", and Det er helt i det blå, "It is completely undecided", *literally* "in the blue".

## Leksjon 37

### TOBAKK

1. **Uten å titte**, "without looking". One more example of an infinitive governed by a preposition, when in English a gerund is used. Note **tittern på hjørnet**, "hide and seek", and **en titter**, "a peeping Tom".
2. **De blanke pipene**, "the shining pipes". **Blank** has several meanings in Norwegian:  
 midt på blanke dagen, in broad daylight  
 Det er blank løgn, It is an absolute lie.  
 Jeg var helt blank, I was absolutely penniless.  
 Han løp på 10 blank, He did it (*literally*, ran) in 10 seconds flat.
3. **Røker pipe**, "smokes a pipe". Note that Norwegian does not use an article here. Compare **å spille piano**, "to play the piano".
4. **Mange utmerkede sorter pipetobakk**, "many excellent kinds of pipe tobacco". Note the pronunciation **udmerkede**, which reflects the older spelling **udmerkede**, and is still used by many speakers. Compare Lesson 33, §7.  
 After the noun **sort**, Norwegian does not use a preposition equivalent to the English "of". Compare Lesson 9, §12 and Lesson 17, §6.
5. **Toasted** refers to the adding of ingredients to tobacco during the heating process.
6. **Lighter** (c.). The Norwegian noun **sigarett-tenner** (c.) is also used. Note the hyphen which is inserted where a group of three identical consonants arises in compounds.
7. **En røker**, "a smoker". This noun for the agent is derived in the usual way, by adding **-er** to the stem of the verb. The indefinite plural ends in **-e**, **røkere**, and the **r** is preserved in the definite plural, **røkerne**, "the smokers".
8. **Mange mindre tobakksbutikker**, "many of the smaller tobaccoconists". The comparative **mindre** is here used absolutely, without any comparison being made. See *Appendix*, §41.  
**Butikk** is used of a rather small shop, **forretning** (c.) of a larger one, and **magasin** (n.) of a large store, or of a highly specialized shop: **glassmagasin**, "shop specializing in glassware"; **hattemagasin**, "milliner's", **skotøymagasin**, "shoeshop", etc.
9. **Osv.**, "and so on". See Lesson 24, §8.

## Leksjon 38

### JEG KJØPER RØKESAKER

1. **Røkesaker**, "a smoker's supplies (requisites)", literally "things for smoking". Compare **lekesaker**, "toys"; **sysaker**, "needlework outfit, sewing things"; **lappesaker**, "mending or repairing outfit especially for tyres". Compare also **drikkevarer**, "(alcoholic) drinks", literally "goods for drinking".
2. **Vi har forresten . . .**, "by the way, we have . . ." The adverb **forresten** is a compound consisting of the preposition **for** and the noun **resten**, "the rest", and can also be written in two words: **for resten**. The literal meaning is "as for the rest".
3. **Ikke så dyre heller**, "not so expensive either". The adverb **heller** used in connection with a negative means "either, neither, nor". But it also functions as a comparative to **gjærne**, "willingly" (see Lesson 8, §2). In such cases it is generally translated "rather".  
 Jeg vil heller ha te enn kaffe, I'd rather have tea than coffee.
4. **Snaddetobakk**, "pipe tobacco". **Pipe** (c.) and **snadde** (c.) are used more or less interchangeably, although historically **snadde** is short for **pipesnadde**, "a short pipe". Nearly all compounds, however, have **pipe-**: **piperenser** (c.), "pipe-cleaner"; **piperøker** (c.), "pipe-smoker", and also **pipetobakk**.
5. **Den jeg pleier å få**, "the one I usually take". See Lesson 14, §1.
6. **Til lighteren min**, "for my lighter". Note the preposition.

## Leksjon 39

## HOS FRISØREN

1. **Frisøren**, "the hairdresser". The suffix **-ør** occurs in a number of nouns derived from verbs and usually denotes profession, occupation. The parallel common gender noun applying to females sometimes ends in **-øse**:

å massere, to massage	massør, masseur	massøse, masseuse
å sufflere, to prompt	sufflør, prompter	suffløse, female prompter
å instruere, to instruct	instruktør, instructor	instruktrise (or kvinnelig instruktør), female instructor
å sjarmere, to charm	sjarmør, charmer, Romeo, lady-killer	

See also Lesson 7, §12.

2. **I samfunnet**, "in society". Note the definite article in Norwegian. **Samfunn** is used of society at large, and also in a more restricted sense of associations, organizations and beings living together: **Studentersamfunnet**, "the Students' Debating Society"; **et kirkesamfunn**, "a religious community"; **et maursamfunn**, "a community of ants". Note also **å leve i samfunn med Gud**, "to live in communion with God". For other examples of the prefix **sam-**, see Lesson 4, §1.
3. **Nå for tiden**, "nowadays". Compare **før i tiden**, "in the past"; **i gamle dager**, "in the old days".
4. **En herre må klippe håret**, "A gentleman must have his hair cut". This active construction is sometimes used, provided there is no ambiguity possible, although it is the hairdresser who cuts the hair. Compare the construction further down in the text: **Damene får håret klippet**, "Ladies have their hair cut".
5. **Barberen**, "the barber". Besides the form **barber**, the longer form **barberer** is also used. In compounds, however, **barber-** is the only one that occurs: **barbersåpe** (c.), "shaving-soap", **barberblad**, "razor-blade".

6. **Står nettopp og klipper**, "is just now busy cutting". This is a typical example of how the continuous tense is expressed through two inflected verbs in Norwegian, the first of which expresses the position and the second the action being carried out:

**Jeg satt og leste**, I sat reading.

**Han gikk og sang**, He walked about singing.

**Hun lå og sov**, She lay sleeping.

7. **Venter på tur**, "wait for their turn". Compare **Hvis tur er det?** "Whose turn is it?", "Who is next?" **Det er min tur**, "It is my turn".

Note also **tur** (c.), "walk, trip"; **spasertur**, "walk, promenade"; **utenlandstur**, "trip abroad". Note the idiomatic **Takk for turen**, "Thank you for your company during the trip", or "Thank you for taking me on this trip". Note also **Takk for skyssen**, "Thank you for the lift".

8. **De leser gjerne i en avis**, "They usually read a newspaper". **Gjerne** here means "usually, as a rule". Synonyms are **som regel**, **i alminnelighet**. See also Lesson 8, §2.
9. **Skal nettopp til å forlate**, "is just about to leave". Note this construction to express what is imminent.
10. **Jeg barberer meg alltid selv**, "I always shave myself". Note how the demonstrative pronoun **selv** is added to the reflexive verb to underline that the shaving is being carried out by the person himself. Additional information in the *Appendix*, §57.
11. **Mannfolk** (n.), "man". This is one of the few neuter nouns for people. **Mannfolk** usually implies a masculine type, a he-man, especially in the context **et reallt mannfolk**, "a real man". **Et reallt mannfolk** also implies courage and an upright character. The corresponding noun for a woman, **et kvinnfolk**, tends to imply something derogatory, although **et reallt kvinnfolk** is laudatory.

## Leksjon 40

### JEG GÅR TIL BARBEREN

1. **Hva var det De ønsket?** "What were you wanting?" The past tense gives an added touch of politeness, just as **kunne jeg få** is more polite than **kan jeg få**.
2. **Så lenge**, "for a minute". Literally, **så lenge** means "so long", and is also used in the same way as English "so long" in the expressions **adjø så lenge**, **morn så lenge**, "goodbye for the present". **Ta plass så lenge** means, strictly speaking, "take a seat as long (as is necessary)". Note also **Jeg har ikke sett ham på lenge**, "I haven't seen him for a long time"; **Han hadde for lenge forlatt byen**, "He had left the town long before".
3. **Imens**, "in the meantime". A synonym to the adverb **imens** is **i mellomtiden**. Note that the conjunction **mens** means "while": **Mens vi venter**, while we are waiting.
4. **Ja, det er nok riktig**, "Yes, I am sure you are right", literally "That is no doubt correct". The sentence modifier **nok** here implies admission.
5. **Se så**, "well", "there", literally "look thus" or "look now". **Se så** is used either when something is finished, as here, or when something goes wrong: **Se så, der slapp han pakken**, "Bother, he dropped the parcel". Compare the exclamations **se se**, **se det**, which imply laudatory encouragement:  

**Se se, det var flink gutt**, Well, well, there's a good boy.
6. **Jeg skal se etter**, "I'll check it; I'll find out". The compound verb **å se etter**, "to check", has the stress on **etter**. Compare the transitive verb **å se etter**, "to look for", with the stress on **se**:  

**Jeg ser etter brillene mine**, I am looking for my spectacles.
7. **Hva var navnet?** "What is the name?" Compare **Hva var det De ønsket** above.

## Leksjon 41

### ÅRSTIDENE

1. **Årstidene**, "the seasons", literally "the times of the year". Note also **på denne tiden av året**, "(at) this time of the year".
2. **Naturen**, "Nature". Personified or abstract nouns or nouns used in a general sense to denote the whole of a class usually take the definite article in Norwegian, e.g.: **skjebnen**, "fate"; **forsynet**, "providence"; **mennesket**, "man(kind)"; **himmelen**, "Heaven"; **fattigdommen**, "poverty".  

**Skjebnen har behandlet ham ille**, Fate has treated him badly.  
**Han tror på forsynet**, He believes in providence.  
**Mennesket lever ikke av brød alene**, Man does not live by bread alone.

Note also the use of the article with the names of the four seasons, e.g.:  
**Våren kommer sent i Norge**, Spring comes late in Norway.
3. **For hver dag**, "with every day". Also **for hver dag som går**, "with every day (that goes by)".
4. **Knoppene skyter**, "the buds swell". The irregular verb **å skyte** means fundamentally "to push". Today the main meaning is "to shoot", but **å skyte** still covers many shades of meaning, e.g.:  

**Han hadde skutt mange elger**, He had shot many elks.  
**Han skjøt skylden over på andre**, He put the blame on others.
5. **Himmelen**, "the sky". **Himmel** can mean "sky, firmament, Heaven":  

**Det var ikke en sky på himmelen**, There wasn't a cloud in the sky.  
**Samle eder skatter i himmelen**, Lay up for yourselves treasures in Heaven.  
**I himmelens navn!** In Heaven's name!  
**Hun var i den syvende himmel**, She was in the seventh heaven.
6. **Så kommer sommeren**, "Then comes summer". **Så** is here a temporal conjunction, meaning "then, thereupon". It can also mean "thus, so, as":  

**Så gikk det til**, Thus it happened.  
**Han kommer ikke tilbake så snart**, He won't return so soon.  
**Han var så frisk som en fisk**, He was as fit as a fiddle, *literally* as healthy as a fish.



(41)

7. **Tar ferie**, "go on holiday". **Ferie** (c.) is used in the singular about the particular vacation, and even when used about holidays in general the singular is normally used:

i **ferien**, during the holidays

I **sommerferien** reiser han nesten hvert år til utlandet, During the summer vacations he goes abroad nearly every year.

Where it is a question of counting up the vacations, the plural is used:

Lærere har lange **ferier**, Teachers have long vacations.

8. **De lyse netters tid**, "the time of the light nights". In genitive constructions like this the genitive -s is added to the indefinite form of the noun, **netter**, rather than to the definite form, **nettene**:

Det norske folks liv og historie, the life and history of the Norwegian people.

9. **Sankthans**, "midsummer", from **Sankt Johannes**, "St. John". Another name for midsummer is **jonsok**. Note also **sankthansaften**, "St. John's Eve", i.e. 23rd June; **sankthansdag**, 24th June, and **sankthansbål** (n.), "St. John's bonfire", i.e. the bonfire of St. John's Eve, to celebrate midsummer.

10. **Av og til trekker tunge skyer . . .**, "now and then heavy clouds spread", literally, "pull". Compare **Det trekker opp til uvær**, "A storm is gathering". This expression is also used in a figurative sense:

Det **trakk opp til uvennskap mellom dem**, Hostility was building up between them.

11. **Det lyner, tordner og regner**, "There is lightning, thunder and rain". Note the impersonal construction in Norwegian, with verbs corresponding to the nouns in English.

12. **Kjøres i hus**, "is carted under cover", literally "into house". With the severe winters in Norway, most of the crops have to be stored indoors. The barns are very large and so arranged that the cart or other vehicle can be driven right into the barn for unloading.

13. **Fryser til**, "freeze over, are covered with ice". Compare **Isen har lagt seg**, "The ice has settled down". Note especially **jeg fryser**, "I feel cold" (not "I am freezing", which is **jeg er iskald**); **fryser du?** "Are you cold?"

Han **frøs på hendene**, His hands were cold.

Hun **hutret og frøs**, She shivered with cold.

Note also the figurative usage: **De frøs ham ut**, "They sent him to Coventry".

## Leksjon 42

### LEK, SPORT OG FRILUFTSLIV

1. **Lek** (c.), "games". In a general sense, **lek** is used collectively in the singular, without an article. But: **de olympiske leker**, "the Olympic games". Note especially **å holde opp mens leken er god**, "to stop while the going is good"; **Arbeidet gikk som en lek**, "The work went with a swing, like clockwork".

2. **Mest populær**, "(the) most popular". **Populær** is one of the adjectives that form their comparative and superlative by means of **mer** and **mest**. Compare *Appendix*, §40.

3. **Det kommer an på**, "it depends on". The adverb **an** occurs with a number of verbs: **å legge an på noe**, "to aim at something"; **å gå an**, "to be done", e.g.: **Slikt går ikke an**, "That sort of thing is not done"; **å se tiden an**, "to wait and see"; **å slå an**, "to take on" in the sense of "to flourish, spread", etc. **Moten har slått an**, "The fashion has taken on (spread)"; **å slå an med pikene**, "to have a chat with the girls", "to flirt".

As a prefix, **an-** occurs in a large number of verbs borrowed from German: **å anta**, "to assume"; **å angi**, "to indicate", "to betray"; **å ansette**, "to appoint", etc.

4. **Er nok fotballen**, "is, no doubt, football". Another example of **nok** as a sentence modifier.

5. **Friidrett** (c.), "athletics". **Friidrett** comprises competition in running, jumping and throwing, and is rather more popular in Norway than in Great Britain.

6. **Sommer som vinter**, "summer as well as winter". A fuller expression, **så vel sommer som vinter**, is also used. Note the following expressions with **som**:

**Maten var så som så**, The food was so-so.

**Det blir hipp som happ hva for en vi tar**, It makes no difference which one we take.

**Han sa som sant var at han ingen penger hadde**, He said, and it was true (or: as was indeed the case), that he had no money. **som bekjent**, as you know, *literally* as (is) known.

7. **Utendørs og innendørs**, "outdoors and indoors". These adverbs are, historically, prepositional expressions, with the noun in the genitive, just like **utenlands**, "abroad", and **innenlands**, "within the country". Compare **til lands**, **til sjøs**, etc.

(42)

8. **Noe av en nasjonalsport**, "something of a national sport". Compare the expression **litt av**, "a bit of, quite", used as an understatement:

**Det var litt av en påkjenning**, It was quite a strain.

**Det var litt av en fest**, It was quite a party.

9. **Ja, det kan en vel si**, "Well, I suppose one can say so". The indefinite pronoun **en** is taking over more and more from the indefinite pronoun **man**. For other ways of replacing **man**, see Lesson 5, §8.
10. **Sparkstøtting** (c.), as will be seen in the small illustration, is a special kind of sleigh, consisting of a chair-like seat on two long metal runners. The name is often shortened to **spark** (c.), and refers to the way in which it is being propelled. The "driver" stands behind the seat which is fitted with a handlebar for steering. He rests with one foot on one of the runners and kicks back rhythmically with the other. On hard snow or ice he can reach a fair speed, especially if he is fitted out with **en sparkklo**, a spiky gadget fastened to the shoe. Downhill he can of course rest with both feet on the runners. The seat can accommodate a passenger, and the **sparkstøtting** is used in winter by grown-ups and children alike.
11. **Å gå på ski**, "to ski", literally "to walk on skis". Similarly, **å gå på skøyter**, "to skate". Very popular also is **å hoppe på ski**, "to jump on skis".  
Note that somebody who **går på ski** is **en skiløper**, "a skier", literally "a ski runner"; he who **hopper på ski** is **en skihopper**, "a ski jumper", and he who **går på skøyter** is **en skøyteløper**, "a skater".
12. **På bena**, "on their feet". The ending **-a** is the neuter definite article plural. Another irregular neuter plural of this type is **barna**, "the children". These are the only neuter nouns that take the definite article **-a** in the plural with most speakers of educated **riksmål**. In many dialects, however, and in **nynorsk**, **-a** is the regular definite article in the neuter plural.

## Leksjon 43

### Første del

#### SOMMERFERIE PÅ LANDET

1. **Han var gårdbruker**, "He was a farmer". Note that Norwegian, unlike English, does not use the indefinite article with nouns in the predicate indicating occupations or positions:

**Han var stortingsmann**, He was an M.P.

**Hun var skuespillerinne**, She was an actress.

2. **Åker og eng**, "cornfields and meadows". **Åker** is a field planted at different periods with corn or other grain, or with root crops or potatoes, whereas **eng** refers to a meadow (hayfield) only. **Åker og eng** are frequently mentioned together as a set phrase. Other examples of such rhyming set phrases, with different initial vowels or identical initial consonants or consonant clusters, are:

**å få til odel og eie**, to receive for good (*literally of property that is entailed*): **odel** = entail; **eie** = ownership

**å måtte gå fra gård og grunn**, to be driven from the holding: **gård** = farm; **grunn** = land

**over stakk og stein**, at full speed: **stakk** = stock; **stein** = stone

**i hui og hast**, in a hurry

3. **Ikke mindre enn**, "no less than". **Mindre** normally refers to size, whereas **færre** refers to number. **Mindre** can, however, be used in a numerical sense when those making up the number are considered collectively, as a group:

**Det var mindre mennesker der andre dagen**, There were fewer people there the second day.

4. **En mengde krøtter**, "cattle, live stock". **Krøtter** (n.) is a corruption of the word **kreatur** (n.). See Lesson 50, §6.
5. **Hønehuset**, "the hen house". The first element of this compound is the collective plural form **høns**, "domestic fowl", "poultry". **Høne** (c.), "hen", applies to the female bird, and has the regular plural **høner**.
6. **Gjessene . . . endene**, "the geese . . . the ducks". Both these nouns have an irregular plural: **gås** (c.), "goose"; **gjess**, "geese"; and **and** (c.), "duck"; **ender**, "ducks". See Appendix, §2, f, i.

## Annen del

## ARBEIDET PÅ EN GÅRD

1. **Var det deg som kjørte?** "Was it you who were driving?" The object forms of personal pronouns are often used predicatively, especially when the pronoun is followed by a relative pronoun:

Det var jeg som gjorde det } It was I who did it.  
 Det var meg som gjorde det }

Object forms are necessary when the following relative pronoun (which can be omitted) is a direct or indirect object in its clause:

Det var ikke ham (som) jeg mente, It was not him (that) I meant.

2. **Hesje** (c.), a rack for drying hay, consisting of upright poles placed in a row with thin wires fastened horizontally to the poles, on to which the hay is hung. This operation is called **å hesje høy**, "to hang up the hay on the rack". **Hesje** is also used for drying sheaves of corn, collectively referred to as **lo** (c.): **å hesje lo**, "to hang up the sheaves of corn on the rack".
3. **Jeg hjalp litt til med melkingen**, "I helped a little with the milking". **Å hjelpe til**, "to help, assist":
- Hun hjalp til i huset**, She helped in the house (i.e. with the house-work).
4. **Jeg skulle gjerne bli bonde**, "I should like to be a farmer". **Bli** implies a change from something else. Compare **Han ble syk**, "He was taken ill". Note the irregular plural of **bonde**: **bønder**, "farmers".

## Leksjon 44

## Første del

## VED SJØEN

1. **Ved sjøen**, "by the sea". The following examples illustrate the wide usage of the preposition **ved**:

**Huset ligger ved elven**, The house is by the river.  
**Bordet står ved vinduet**, The table is by the window.  
**Vi sitter ved bordet**, We sit at the table.  
**De bor like ved oss**, They live near us.  
**slaget ved Waterloo**, the Battle of Waterloo  
**Det fine ved huset er beliggenheten**, The nice thing about the house is its situation.  
**Han er ikke ved sine fulle fem**, He is not in his right mind.  
**ved seks-tiden**, about six o'clock

2. **Reise ned til**, "go to". Norwegians use **ned** for places along the coast, and **opp** for highland and mountains. They also use **ned** for places in Southern Norway, and **opp** for places in the north: **dra ned på Sørlandet**, "go down to Southern Norway"; **reise opp til Finnmark**, "go up to Finnmark".
3. **Sørlandet**, "Southern Norway". Compare **Østlandet**, "Eastern Norway", and **Vestlandet**, "Western Norway", but **Nord-Norge**, "Northern Norway". Note that one of the counties in the north is called **Nordland**.
4. **Barna fryder seg**, "The children are delighted". **Barna** is the irregular definite plural of **barn** (n.). Note the reflexive construction in Norwegian: **å fryde seg**, "to be delighted, to rejoice".
5. **Usjenert**, "undisturbed", literally "unembarrassed". **Å være sjenert** means "to be shy, embarrassed": **en sjenert ung mann**, "a shy young man"; **Han sjenerte seg for å be om penger**, "He couldn't bring himself to ask for money", "He was shy of asking for money".
6. **Har man fått tak i båt**, "if you have got hold of a boat". **Å få tak i** is used both in a literal and a figurative sense:

**Jeg fikk ikke tak i hva han sa**, I didn't grasp what he said.

Annen del

# FERIEPLANER

1. **I sommer**, "this summer". In connection with seasons, the preposition **i** is used about the season at the time of speaking, and also when referring to a season a few months before or after that season:

**I sommer skal vi til London**, This (coming) summer we are going to London.

**Det regner mye i sommer**, There is a lot of rain this summer.

**I sommer besøkte vi London**, This (last) summer we visited London.

Note that with months and years there is no such restriction for the use of **i**: **I mai 1814**; **i 1814**; **jeg fyller 50 i mai om to år**, "I'll be 50 in May in two years' time".

Note also **i uken som var** = **sist(e) uke**, last week, and **i uken som kommer** =  **neste uke**, next week.

2. **Vi skal ligge ved sjøen**, "we are going to the seaside", literally "we shall lie by the sea".  
**Å ligge**, "to lie", is often used in the sense of staying somewhere on holiday: **å ligge på fjellet**, "to stay in the mountains"; **å ligge på landet**, "to stay in the country". Note also the idiomatic **å ligge på latsiden**, "to be lazy", literally "to lie on the lazy side".
3. **Lar dere barna bli alene igjen da?** "Do you leave the children behind on their own, then?" The unstressed adverb **da** is often tagged on to questions that are closely correlated to a preceding statement or arise from a given situation, in the same way as "then" is tagged on in English.
4. **Bedre . . . enn**, "better . . . than". Note this expression for comparison of things that are different. Compare **like . . . som** for comparison of things that are equal:

**Han er like gammel som meg**, He is the same age as I (am).

5. **Spiller ingen rolle**, "is of no importance", "does not matter". **Rolle** (c.) means "part, rôle":

**Hovedrollene var godt besatt**, The main parts were well cast.

**Rollelisten**, the characters, *literally* the list of parts.

**Det spiller en stor rolle**, It is of great importance.

6. **Det morsomste de vet**, "the greatest fun they know". The superlative can be used as a noun, just like the positive and the comparative: **De siste skal bli de første**, "The last shall be the first".

7. **Leie en hytte**, "rent a cabin". A **hytte** is usually a wooden house, often a log cabin, sometimes rather primitive and meant for summer use only, but often well constructed and suitable for all seasons. **Hytter** can vary considerably in size, but are usually used for holiday purposes only. A very large percentage of the population possess a **hytte** of their own. The most popular location for a **hytte** is either in the high mountains, 2500 to 3000 feet above sea level, or by the sea.
8. **Jeg skal høre med min kone**, "I shall speak to, consult, my wife". Note this idiomatic expression which means "speak to and extract an opinion, a promise, or help from".



## Leksjon 45

### Første del

#### BILKJØRING

1. **Kjøre bil**, "drive a car". Note the absence of the indefinite article.
2. **Lære seg**, "learn". The reflexive **å lære seg** and the non-reflexive verb **å lære** are used interchangeably in most cases. But when it is a question of the learner teaching himself, the pronoun **selv** is often used in addition to the reflexive pronoun, e.g.:  
  

**Han har lært seg tysk selv**, He has learnt German on his own, He has taught himself German.

One can also say: **Han har lært seg tysk på egen hånd**, literally "on (his) own hand".
3. **Fagtekniske uttrykk**, "technical terms". **Fag** (n.) means "subject, branch, profession". Compare **fagkunnskaper** (c.), "professional knowledge"; **fagmann** (c.), "expert"; **fagarbeider** (c.), "skilled workman".
4. **En utlending**, "a foreigner". Compare **en innfødt**, "a native".
5. **Tettbygde strøk**, "built-up areas". Note the special meaning of **bygd** (c.), "rural district". Compare **bygdeungdom** (c.), "youth from the rural areas"; **bygdebok**, "book on local history". For practical purposes, **bygd** is often best translated by the ecclesiastical term "parish", **sogn** (n.). For administrative purposes, the term **herred** (n.) is now used for the rural districts. Compare **herredsstyre** (n.), "rural district council".
6. **Straffebestemmelser**, "penal clauses, penal regulations". **Å bestemme**, "to decide"; **en bestemmelse**, "what has been decided", "a regulation". One can equally well say: **Det er strenge straffer** (c.) **for det**, "There are severe penalties for that". Compare **å straffe**, "to penalize"; **en straff-fange**, "a convict".

### Annen del

#### BILEN ER I USTAND

1. **I ustand**, "out of order". Compare **i stand**, "in order". The prefix **u-** is the usual way of expressing opposites in Norwegian:

<b>venn</b> (c.), friend	<b>uvenn</b> , enemy
<b>sannhet</b> (c.), truth	<b>usannhet</b> , falsehood
<b>lykkelig</b> , happy	<b>ulykkelig</b> , unhappy

In a few cases, however, the prefix **u-** has an intensifying function:

<b>best</b> (n.), beast	<b>ubest</b> , nasty beast
<b>vær</b> (n.), weather	<b>uvær</b> , bad weather, storm

2. **Den går ikke som den skal**, "it doesn't run as it should". For the use of **gå**, see Lesson 21, §9. Note the use of **skal** where English uses "ought to" or "should".
3. **Ble utladet**, "went flat", literally "was unloaded".
4. **La vogn bli stående her**, "leave the car here", literally "let the car remain standing here". For the present participle, see *Appendix*, §65. The ending **-a** in **vogna** is the definite article singular in the feminine. **Vogn** (common gender, or feminine gender with many speakers) is used of many types of unpowered cart or carriage; also cars, although with a touch of slang. Compare **barnevogn**, "pram", literally "baby carriage".
5. **Ikke så farlig**, "not very serious". The unstressed adverb **så** here expresses degree, without any comparison being implied. Compare. **Jeg ble så redd**, "I was very frightened"; **Jeg er så vant til det**, "I am so used to it, quite used to it".
6. **Vil De da være så snill**, "will you then be good enough". The unstressed adverb **da** has here the same function as the tagged-on **da** discussed in Lesson 44, Second Part, §3. If one should ascribe a meaning to it, it would be "since that is so", referring back to the mechanic's description of the faults.
7. **Skifte olje**, "change the oil". Compare **å skifte klær**, "to change one's clothes"; **å skifte tog**, "to change trains"; **å arbeide i tre skift**, "to work in three shifts".
8. **Støtfangeren**, "the bumper", literally "the catcher of the bumps".

(45)

9. **Det glatte føret**, "the slippery road surface". There is no real equivalent in English to the Norwegian noun **føre** (n.), which refers to surface conditions for travelling: **vinterføre**, "road conditions in winter"; **sledeføre**, "surface conditions suitable for sleighs". **Føre** is used particularly with reference to snow conditions, and it is not restricted to roads: **skiføre**, "snow suitable for skiing"; **kjelkeføre**, "conditions suitable for sledges".

## Leksjon 46

### Første del

#### HANDEL OG INDUSTRI

1. **Jordbruk** (n.), "agriculture", literally "use of (the) soil". Compare **skogbruk**, "forestry". **Et bruk** or **et gårdsbruk** is used with reference to a self-contained independent farm. **Et bruk** is also used of an industrial undertaking out in the country, especially one based on timber: **et sagbruk**, "a saw-mill".
2. **Milevide skoger**, "forests miles wide". Remember that a Norwegian **mil** (c.) is 10 kilometres, and can only be translated "mile" where the context calls for style rather than accuracy. Note that **mil** takes no ending in the indefinite plural: **tre mil**.
3. **Den . . . mellomste delen**, "the middle part". **Mellomst** occurs only as a superlative, literally "middlemost". For other examples, see *Appendix*, §39.
4. **Papir- og cellulosefabrikker**, "paper and cellulose factories". See Lesson 28, §11.
5. **Lastebiler**, "lorries", literally "loading cars".
6. **Korn** (n.), "grain". **Korn** is used collectively for oats, barley, rye and wheat. Note also **ert(er)** (c.), "pea(s)", and **mais** (c.), "maize".
7. **Innfører**, "imports". Note the prefix **inn-** where there is a clear opposition to **ut-**: **utføre**, "to export". But: **individ** (n.), "individual"; **insekt** (n.), "insect".
8. **Sydfrukter**, "fruits from the (warm lands of the) South": **banan(er)** (c.), "banana(s)"; **appelsin(er)** (c.), "orange(s)"; **drue(r)** (c.), "grape(s)", etc.
9. **I de senere år**, "in recent years". Compare **i den senere tid**, "recently".
10. **Utbygd**, "harnessed", literally "built out". Norwegians talk of **å temme fossene**, literally "to tame the waterfalls".
11. **I verden**, "in the world". Note that Norwegian uses no definite article: **en verden**, "a world". Or, more accurately, the definite article has been permanently attached to the original singular form **verd**: **verd + -en = verden**. Compare, however, **i underverdenen**, "in the underworld"; **i forbryterverdenen**, "in the world of crime", and other compounds where **verden** means "circle, milieu". A parallel to **verden** is **ørken** (c.), "desert", from an original **ørk + -en**.

(46)

12. **Sjøfarts- og handelsbyer**, "shipping and commercial towns". See §4 above, and Lesson 28, §11.

#### Annen del

#### FORRETNINGSSAMTALE

1. **Til stede**, "present", i.e. "available". One of the instances where the preposition **til** governs an old genitive, this time ending in **-e**, instead of the usual **-s**. See Lesson 14, §9, and Lesson 12, §1.
2. **For øyeblikket**, "for the moment", "just now". One can also use the preposition **i**: **i øyeblikket**. Compare **et øyeblikk**, "just a minute", literally "a winking of an eye".
3. "**Granfoss**", a fictitious name, literally "the fir waterfall". Compare the genuine place names **Hønefoss**, **Harpefoss**, **Bardufoss**.
4. **På forhånd**, "in advance, beforehand", here: "already". Note the expression **På forhånd takk**, used in letters when you ask a favour, literally "on beforehand thanks".
5. **Å formidle**, "to handle". Note also **mellommann** (c.), "the middleman": **Det er mellommannen som går av med fortjenesten**. "It is the middleman who runs away with the profit".
6. **Særlig gode forbindelser**, "particularly good connections". Synonyms for the adverb **særlig** are **særdeles**, **spesielt**, **særskilt**. The prefix **sær-** occurs in a number of words in which it implies something special, unique: **særeie** (n.), "separate ownership" (of married people); **særpreg** (n.), "distinctive mark or feature", **særsyn** (n.), "unique phenomenon"; **særling** (c.), "eccentric person"; **særtrykk** (n.), "off-print".
7. **Såpass**, "so, that much, sufficiently". Another adverb meaning the same is **så vidt**.
8. **61 34 55**. Note that telephone numbers are printed with a space between each pair of numbers, and read in that way. As an ordinary figure, 613.455 would be read **seks hundre og tretten tusen fire hundre og femtifem**.
9. **Komme bort til meg**, "come over to me". Depending on the situation, one would say **komme opp**, "come up", **komme inn**, "come in", **komme ut**, "come out". Within the same room "come over to" is **komme bort til**, or, more literary, **komme hen til**.

#### Leksjon 47

#### Første del

#### LEGE, TANNLEGE OG APOTEK

1. **Tennene**, "the teeth", irregular plural of **tann** (c.), "tooth".
2. **Hvis den ikke allerede er for dårlig**, "if it isn't already too bad". Note the word order. There are two adverbs, and both are placed before the finite verb since this is a subordinate clause. Note that the negative adverb **ikke** comes first, as in English. In a main sentence, the two adverbs would be placed after the finite verb:

**Den er ikke allerede for dårlig?** It isn't (isn't it) already too bad?

3. **Dersom det ikke går an**, "if it isn't possible". Note the expression **å gå an**, "to be possible":

**Går det an å få to billetter til i aften?** Is it possible to have two tickets for this evening?

For other verbs with **an**, see Lesson 42, §3.

4. **Han kommer til å spørre**, "he will ask". **Kommer til å** is a common way of expressing the future. Formation of future tense can be found in *Appendix*, §53.
5. **Ber om å få se**, "(he) asks to see". **Be om** is a compound verb, after which the infinitive takes the infinitive mark, i.e. the particle **å**. The verb **å be**, on the other hand, adds an infinitive without the infinitive mark. See Lesson 9, §5.
6. **Hva som feiler Dem**, "what is wrong with you". The relative pronoun **som** cannot be left out when it is the subject of the relative clause. See *Appendix*, §17. Note the use of the verb **å feile**, literally "to go wrong, be wanting". Compare:

**Han feilte ingenting**, There was nothing wrong with him.  
**Det er menneskelig å feile**, To err is human.

It is often used as an impersonal verb, e.g.:

**Det feilte meget på at han var den beste i klassen**, He was far from being the best in the class.

7. For å drive apotek, "to run a chemist's shop". Å drive means "to run" (a shop, a café, etc.), but is also used in a much wider sense: "to have as a job; to be at; to do":

Han drev som bonde i mange år, He did farming for many years.  
Han driver mye med idrett, He goes in a lot for athletics.

Hva er det du driver med? What are you doing? (i.e. What particular work are you engaged in?)

8. Bevilling (c.), "licence". Norwegians themselves sometimes confuse bevilling and bevilgning (c.), "grant; concession of money", derived from å bevilge, "to grant".
9. Har De fått en resept, "if you have got a prescription". The conditional clause is indicated through the inversion of subject and verb.
10. Enkelte toalettsaker, "a few, certain toilet articles". Note the meaning "some" in the plural, as here. In the singular, however, enkelt means "one only; just one":

Han fikk én enkelt stemme, He got just one vote.

Compare the adjective enkel, "simple", which has the plural form enkle: en enkel mekanisme, "a simple mechanism"; enkle mennesker, "simple people".

11. All slags kosmetikk, som sminke . . ., "all sorts of cosmetics, such as . . .". Kosmetikk is a collective word, which has no plural. Som or såsom is used when words for specific items are added as examples to a word that stands for a group or category. Other ways of adding such examples are: for eksempel, "for instance"; som for eksempel, "as for instance"; and blant annet, "among other things".

Annen del

## HOS LEGEN

1. Jeg tror jeg feiler alt mulig, jeg, "I think there are all sorts of things wrong with me". The repetition of a personal pronoun at the end of a sentence or clause is a very characteristic feature of colloquial Norwegian. This repeated pronoun is unstressed and carries no particular meaning. Compare:

Jeg vet ikke, jeg, I don't know.

This usage is by no means restricted to uneducated speakers, as is more or less the case with the corresponding construction in English: "I told him straight, I did".

Note that there is also a parallel construction where the added pro-

noun receives emphatic stress and takes on the function of a demonstrative pronoun:

Du klarer det nok, du, I'm sure you will manage.

2. Doktor Eriksen. Lege is used more and more about members of the medical profession, although doktor can also be used:

Å gå til legen } to go to the doctor.  
Å gå til doktoren }

Doktor (abbreviated dr.) is used as a title, and is also used when addressing a doctor:

Bør jeg holde sengen, doktor? Ought I to stay in bed, doctor?

3. Jeg er så søvnløs, "I can't sleep", literally "I am so sleepless". Så is here used absolutely, to express a high degree:

Jeg er så forkjølet, I have such a cold.

Jeg er så trett, I am so tired.

Often, however, så implies a comparison:

Han er så rik som en krøsus, He is as rich as Croesus,

or an explanation:

Han er så stor at han klarer seg selv, He is so big (old) that he can manage on his own.

4. Vondt i ryggen, "pains in the back". Vondt is, strictly speaking, an adverb to the adjective vond, "evil", but this adverb is used as a noun in connection with pains: å ha vondt i hodet, "to have a head-ache"; å ha vondt i magen, "to have pains in the stomach". Note also the idiomatic:

Jeg har vondt av henne, I feel sorry for her.

The normal noun is onde (n.):

Alderdommen bringer mange onder, Old age brings many evils.

5. Konsul Andersen, "Consul Andersen". It is customary in Norway to address a man by the title which indicates his profession, e.g.:

tannlege Holm, literally Dentist Holm.

arkitekt Rud, literally Architect Rud.

redaktør Berg, literally Editor Berg.

6. Da blir De kanskje nødt til, "then you may have to". The present tense blir indicates future. Nødt is the past participle of å nøde, "to force", "to urge". Å være nødt til means "to be forced to", "to have to".

7. Å legge Dem inn på sykehus, "to go into hospital", literally "to put yourself in at (a) hospital". Note also the use of the passive voice:

Han ble lagt inn på sykehus, He was taken to hospital.

8. Om en to-tre måneder, "in two or three months time". See Lesson 14, §12.



## Leksjon 48

### Første del

#### TEATRET

1. **Lettere ting**, "light things". The comparative **lettere** is here used absolutely, without any comparison being intended. (See *Appendix*, §41.)
2. **Første rad balkong**, "dress circle". This is often referred to as **første losjerad**, and **annen rad balkong**, "upper circle", as **annen losjerad**. **Galleriet**, "the gallery", is often referred to as **amfiteater**, or **amfi** (n.).
3. **Kunstnerisk**, "artistic". Compare **å ha kunstneriske anlegg**, "to have artistic talents". Note **kunst** (c.), "art", and **kunstverk** (n.), "work of art". Note also **kunstig**, "artificial": **kunstige blomster**, "artificial flowers"; and **kunstferdig**, "skilful; elaborate": **en kunstferdig frisyre**, "an elaborate hairstyle".
4. **Skuespillere og skuespillerinner**, "actors and actresses". See Lesson 7, §12.
5. **Oppsetningen**, "the production". **Å sette opp et stykke**, "to produce a play". Note also the inseparable compound verb **å oppsette**, "to postpone":  

Vi kan ikke oppsette reisen lenger, We cannot postpone the journey any longer.
6. **Alt etter**, "all according to". See Lesson 11, §9.

### Annen del

#### I TEATRET

1. **Til i aften**, "for this evening". **Til** is used with a number of words to indicate a particular time in the future:  

De kommer til uken, They'll come next week.  
 Hvor skal du reise til sommeren? Where are you going this summer?  
 Kan du vente til i morgen? Can you wait until tomorrow?

Note also **tilårskommen**, "advanced in years".
2. **6. benk**, "sixth row". Ordinal numerals are expressed by means of cardinals, followed by a full stop. See Lesson 19, §10.
3. **Hvor mange billetter skal det være?** "How many tickets do you want?" Compare:  

Jeg skal bare ha to, I only want two.  
 Skal det være program? Do you want a programme?

Note also another idiomatic use of **å skulle**:  

Han skal være syk, He is said to be ill. They say he is ill.
4. **Billettene takk**, "Tickets, please". Note the definite article in Norwegian.
5. **Ledd så godt**, "laughed so heartily". "Heartily" can also be translated **hjertelig**. Compare **å storle**, "to roar with laughter"; **å småle**, "to laugh a little".
6. **Så godt som de spilte**, "how well they acted". Note the relative pronoun **som**, which has no equivalent in English. This **som** may, however, be left out: **Så godt de spilte**.
7. **Fra først til sist**, "from beginning to end". Note also: **fra først av**, "to begin with"; "at first"; "from the beginning"; **til sist**, "in the end".

## Leksjon 49

### NORSK LITTERATUR

1. **Skaldekvad, eddadikt**, "skaldic poetry, eddaic poetry". The skaldic poetry dealt with contemporary people and events, and was carried out in a much more elaborate metre and metaphorical language than the eddaic poetry, which dealt with mythological themes. Both types of poetry have alliteration in common as a characteristic feature. For survival of such alliterations, see Lesson 43, Part 1, §2.
2. **På dansk skriftspråk**, "written in Danish". Even if the Old Norse language died out as a written language, much of it lived on in the dialects and formed the basis for the establishment of **nynorsk** about 1850. And even if Norwegians wrote in Danish, their pronunciation remained largely Norwegian. This development makes it necessary and important, when dealing with the history of the Norwegian language, to distinguish between **skriftspråk**, "written language", and **talespråk** or **talemål** (n.), "spoken language".
3. **Holberg var nordmann**, "Holberg was (a) Norwegian". Note the absence of the indefinite article in Norwegian.
4. **På . . . danske scener**, "in . . . Danish theatres". Scene (c.) means "stage", but is often used in a wider sense to express "theatre". Compare: **å gå til scenen**, "to take up acting as a profession".
5. **1800-tallet**, "the 19th century". Also: **det 19. århundre**. Note **i 1880-årene**, "in the 1880's".
6. **Får Norge**, "Norway gets". This is the so called historical present tense, used to add liveliness to the style.
7. **Er kalt gullalderen**, "is called the golden age". The passive form in -s could also have been used here: **kallès gullalderen**.
8. **Gengangere**, "Ghosts". **Gengangere** is Ibsen's orthography; the modern spelling is **gjengangere**, literally, "those who walk again", a meaning which is well captured by the French translation, **Les Revenants**.
9. **Spilles**, "are acted". Compare **spille piano**, "play the piano"; **spille fallitt**, "go bankrupt". Note also:

**Store verdier står på spill**, Large sums are at stake.

10. **Er blitt folkeeie**, literally "has become the property of the people". An expression equivalent to **folkeeie** is **allemannseie**, literally "the property of everybody".
11. **Den tids mest kjente romanforfattere**, "the most famous novelists of that period". Compare **kjent**, "known"; **ukjent**, "unknown"; **velkjent**, "well known". Note that after a genitive neither the definite article of the adjective nor the suffixed definite article of the noun can occur. Compare **den mest kjente romanforfatteren i sin tid**.
12. **Markens Grøde**, "Growth of the Soil". **Grøde** (c.) is an old poetic word which has to some extent been replaced in the modern language by the matter-of-fact word **avling** (c.), "crop". **Grøde** is related to **å gro**, "to grow". In modern Norwegian it is only the first word of a book title that receives a capital letter, unless, of course, the title contains a proper name. But in older texts all nouns were written with a capital, hence the capital G in **Markens Grøde**.
13. **Kristin Lavransdatter**, "Kristin, daughter of Lavrans". This reflects the old Norwegian system for naming females, still in use in rural districts as late as the 19th century. Compare **Bjørnson, Karlsen**. The suffixes **-son** and **-sen** were originally used for male descendants only; **Karlsen** means, literally, "the son of Karl". Today however, names in **-son** and **-sen**, like other family names, have been attached permanently to the family, and remain the same from generation to generation, except where the name is altered through marriage. (When **frøken Karlsen** marries **herr Holm** she becomes **fru Holm**, and is even entitled to carry her husband's title, if he has one. If **herr Holm** is a professor, **frøken Karlsen** becomes **fru professor Holm**.)
14. **Duun . . . Vesaas**. The spelling of Norwegian proper names can be very erratic. For **aa** in **Vesaas**, see Lesson 19, §10.

## Leksjon 50

### SØFUGLEN

1. **Søfuglen**, "The Sea Bird". This poem by Johan Sebastian Welhaven dates from 1839, and contains a number of orthographical and grammatical features that differ from modern Norwegian. All nouns are written with a capital initial, **å** is written **aa**, **øy** is written **ø** or **ei**, **p** and **t** are sometimes written **b** and **d**: **skyder** for **skyter**, **dybt** for **dypt**, **ud** for **ut**, **dybe** for **dype**. Long **o** is written **oe**; **groer** for **gror**, **boer** for **bor**; long **å** is written **aae**: **gaaer** for **går**. In the present tense there is a difference between singular and plural: **en Jæger gaar**, but **de klare Bølger spille**. Finally, there is the Danish word **Sø** for Norwegian **sjø**, "sea".
2. **Øens høie Kyst**, "the steep shore of the island". The modern form is **øy** (c.), "island". With many speakers, **øy** takes the feminine gender, especially in the definite form: **en** (or **ei**) **øy**, "an island"; **øya**, "the island".
3. **Spille**, "play". Here present tense plural. Modern Norwegian: **spiller**.
4. **I den steile Ur**, "on the steep rockstrewn slope". **Ur** (c.) is a specifically Norwegian word, meaning rockstrewn slope.
5. **For Løier**, "for fun". The noun **løyer** occurs only in the plural. Compare **å holde løyer med noen**, "to pull somebody's leg".
6. **Det smukke Kreatur**, "the beautiful creature". **Kreatur** (n.) is here used in the original sense, "being, thing created". See also Lesson 43, Part I, §4. The adjective **smukk** is rather obsolete and has been replaced by **vakker**, **pen**, **nydelig**. Compare, however, the colloquial **en smukkas**, "a handsome, well-groomed young man".
7. **Kan ei drage**, "cannot move". The negative adverb **ei** is obsolete, and outside poetry it survives only in a few expressions:

**Enten du vil eller ei**, Whether you want to or not.

**Dengang ei, sa Tordenskjold**, Not this time, said Tordenskjold  
(*quotation from a poem about the famous Norwegian hero*).

**Drage**, "to move; to go", is in modern Norwegian **dra**. The same development has given the modern forms **si** and **ta** from the older forms **sige** and **tage**. Note also **be**, from older **bede**, and **bli** from older **blive**.

(50)

8. **Redens lune Skjød**, "the cosy lap of the nest". **Rede**, "nest", is here common gender; in modern Norwegian the word is neuter: **et rede**. The adjective **lun** means "cosy", especially warm and free from draught.
9. **Sin Nød**, "his difficulties". **Nød** (c.) means "difficult situation; difficulties", and often (but not here) "poverty". Note the proverb:

**Nød lærer naken kvinne å spinne**, Necessity is the mother of invention, *literally*, Need teaches (the) naked woman (how) to spin.

Note also the expressions **til nød**, "at a pinch", and **med nød og neppe**, "only just", *literally* "with need and hardly".

10. **Bølgen kold sig lukker**, "the cold wave closes up". The reflexive **å lukke seg** means "to shut; close":

**Blomstene lukker seg om kvelden**, Flowers close up at night.

Note that this is the only line where the poet takes liberties with what would be normal word order in prose.

11. **I søens dybe Grunde**, "in the depths of the sea". **Grunn** (c.) means "bottom"; this gives us, *literally*, "on the deep bottoms of the sea".  
**Grunde** is the Danish plural form, as compared with Norwegian **grunner**.
12. **Den stumme Fisk**, "the dumb fish". Compare **døvstum**, "deaf and dumb".

## FORVIKLINGER

1. The main deviations from modern Norwegian spelling in this poem are:

æbletræ	for epletre (n.)	tagskægget	for takskjegget
fuldt	„ fullt	bode	„ bodde
vimsed	„ vimset	mit rede	„ mitt rede
liden	„ liten	kæmped	„ kjempet
forelsked sig	„ forelsket seg	fik	„ fikk
misted	„ mistet	besked	„ beskjed
forloved	„ forlovet	trilled	„ trillet
fløj	„ fløy	sprak	„ sprakk
sørget	„ sørget	faldt	„ falt
nu	„ nå	ak!	„ akk!
at gøre	„ å gjøre	sit	„ sitt
tæt	„ tett	rejstes	„ reistes
levet	„ levet or levde	nøgen	„ naken
i løn	„ i lønn	hæk	„ hekk
sukked	„ sukket	væk	„ vekk
kælder	„ kjeller	fandt	„ fant
gik	„ gikk	al	„ all
flugt	„ flukt	bleven	„ blitt
frugt	„ frukt	blev	„ ble

2. Dryssende fuldt, "over-full", literally, "sprinklingly full", so full that petals were falling off. Modern spelling keeps the double l in the neuter to avoid confusion with *fult*, from *ful*, "cunning; sly".
3. Vimsed, "bustled". Å vimse, "to move about in an erratic manner". Compare *en vimsekopp*, "a scatter-brain".
4. Så forloved de sig, de to, "Then they got engaged, the two of them".
5. Kart (c.), "green, unripe fruit or berry". Compare *et kart*, "a map".
6. Det var nu intet at gøre ved, "There was, after all, nothing to be done about that". Note the old way of rendering the infinitive mark: *at*. Modern spelling: *å*. Nu is here a sentence modifier, meaning "after all".
7. Der fik ingen besked, "Nobody knew about it", literally "Nobody got a message". For *der*, see Appendix, §48.
8. Ligervis, "likewise". Now obsolete; modern Norwegian would say *på samme måte, på samme vis, likeså, likedan, også*.
9. Al denne jammer og nød var spart, "All this misery and suffering could have been saved". The past tense *var spart* here stands for the conditional *kunne ha vært spart*.
10. Blevet, "been", obsolete form of the past participle of *å bli*, or rather of its old form, *at blive*.

## INDEX TO APPENDIX

## APPENDIX

## Outline of Norwegian Grammar



# (Index to Appendix)

## Nouns

Conditional	32
Future	33
Future perfect	34
Mood-forming auxiliaries	32
Perfect	33
Perfect conditional	34
Present perfect	33
Present perfect progressive	34

## Verbs

Auxiliary	51-54
Classification	49
Compound	55-59
Dependent	54
Post participle	49, 59
Present participle	51, 59
Reciprocal	52
Reflexive	58, 71
Strong	60-64
Weak	50

## Word order

71-73

# INDEX TO APPENDIX

(The references are to sections)

## Adjectives

Comparison	33-41
Definite declension	31
Demonstrative	10
Indefinite declension	21-30
Interrogative	11-13, 15
Possessive	6-9
Special cases	30
Used as nouns	32

## Adverbs

Comparison	42-43
------------	-------

## Exclamations

	14
--	----

## Interrogative sentences

	16
--	----

## Nouns

Common gender	2, 4
Feminine gender	5
Neuter gender	3-4

## Prepositions

	76
--	----

## Pronouns

Demonstrative	10
Det	48
Interrogative	11-13, 15
Personal	44-48
Possessive	6-9
Reciprocal	59
Reflexive	57
Relative	17-20

## Questions

	16
--	----

## Sentence modifiers

	70
--	----

## S-verbs

Active	64
Deponent	64
Passive	63
Reciprocal	62
Reflexive	61

## (Index to Appendix)

### Tenses

Conditional .. .. .	55
Future .. .. .	53
Future perfect .. .. .	54
Mood-forming auxiliaries .. .. .	52
Perfect .. .. .	51
Perfect conditional .. .. .	56
Pluperfect .. .. .	51
Tense-forming auxiliaries .. .. .	51

### Verbs

Auxiliary .. .. .	51-54
Classification .. .. .	49
Compound .. .. .	66-69
Deponent .. .. .	64
Past participle .. .. .	49, 69
Present participle .. .. .	65, 69
Reciprocal .. .. .	62
Reflexive .. .. .	58, 61
S-verbs .. .. .	60-64
Strong .. .. .	50
Weak .. .. .	49

Word order .. .. .	71-75
--------------------	-------

## APPENDIX

### 1. NOUNS

Although there are three genders in Norwegian, the use of the feminine gender is very restricted in *riksmål*, and in nearly all cases masculine and feminine nouns can be grouped together as common gender and treated in the same way.

The rules given below are for reference purposes only and do not in any case cover every noun. The best way to get to know the terminations for any particular noun is by constant practice in reading and listening to the records, rather than by attempting to learn a great many rules.

The definite plural is the same for nearly all nouns, whereas in the indefinite plural there are more variations.

### 2. COMMON GENDER NOUNS

- (a) The indefinite article *en* precedes the nouns as a separate word. The same letters following the noun and attached to it indicate the definite article; if the noun ends in an unstressed *-e*, only the termination *-a* is added. The regular indefinite plural ending is *-er*; if the noun ends in an unstressed *-e*, only the termination *-r* is added.

Definite plural ends in *-ene*; if the noun ends in an unstressed *-e*, only the termination *-ne* is added. Examples:

Singular		Plural	
Indefinite	Definite	Indefinite	Definite
<i>en bil</i> , a car	<i>bilen</i> , the car	<i>biler</i> , cars	<i>bilene</i> , the cars
<i>en hage</i> , a garden	<i>hagen</i> , the garden	<i>hager</i> , gardens	<i>hagene</i> , the gardens

- (b) A few common gender nouns like *en feil*, "a fault"; *en mil*, "ten kilometres"; *en ski*, "a ski"; *en sko*, "a shoe"; *en ting*, "a thing"; *en øre*, "an øre (coin)", take no ending in the indefinite plural, e.g.:

<i>en feil</i> , a fault	<i>feilen</i> , the fault	<i>feil</i> , faults	<i>feilene</i> , the faults
--------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------------

- (c) The following nouns take only *-ne* in the definite plural:

<i>en meter</i> , a metre	<i>meteren</i>	<i>meter</i>	<i>meterne</i>
<i>en liter</i> , a litre	<i>literen</i>	<i>liter</i>	<i>literne</i>

- (d) Common gender nouns ending in unstressed *-er* and denoting profession, citizenship or nationality, add *-e* in the indefinite plural and *-ne* in the definite plural, e.g.:

<i>en bærer</i> , a porter	<i>bæreren</i>	<i>bærere</i>	<i>bærerne</i>
<i>en bergenser</i> , a citizen of Bergen	<i>bergenseren</i>	<i>bergensere</i>	<i>bergenserne</i>
<i>en italiener</i> , an Italian	<i>italieneren</i>	<i>italienere</i>	<i>italienerne</i>

A few other nouns in *-er* are also inflected like this: *en borger*, "a citizen"; *en keiser*, "an emperor"; *en mester*, "a master"; *en kjeller*, "a cellar".

- (e) In a few other common gender nouns in *-er* the unstressed *-e* is dropped in the plural, e.g.:

<i>en neger</i> , a negro	<i>negeren</i>	<i>negre</i>	<i>negrene</i>
<i>en søster</i> , a sister	<i>søsteren</i>	<i>søstre</i>	<i>søstrene</i>

- (f) Some common gender nouns add the normal endings, but change their vowel in the plural, e.g.:

<i>en and</i> , a duck	<i>anden</i>	<i>ender</i>	<i>endene</i>
<i>en bok</i> , a book	<i>boken</i>	<i>bøker</i>	<i>bøkene</i>
<i>en hånd</i> , a hand	<i>hånden</i>	<i>bender</i>	<i>hendene</i>

## (Appendix)

Among the nouns inflected like and are: kraft, "power, force", krefter; natt, "night", netter; stad, "city, town", steder, "places"; stand, "rank, profession", stender; strand, "beach", strender; tann, "tooth", tenner.

Among the nouns inflected like bok are: bonde, "farmer", bønder; fot, "foot", føtter; rot, "root", røtter.

- (g) A few nouns ending in a stressed vowel change the vowel but add only -r, -rne in the plural, e.g.:

en klo, a claw	kloen	klør	klørne
en rå, a yard (in ship's rigging)	råen	rær	rærne
en tå, a toe	tåen	tær	tærne
en ku, a cow	kua	kyr	kyrne

Ku can also be inflected regularly: ku, kua, kuer, kuene.

- (h) Note the following irregular common gender nouns denoting family relationships:

en far, a father	faren	fedre	fedrene
en mor, a mother	moren	mødre	mødrene
en bror, a brother	broren	brødre	brødrene
en datter, a daughter	datteren	døtre	døtrene

- (i) A few nouns form the indefinite plural through the change of vowel, but without an ending, e.g.:

en gås, a goose	gåsa	gjess	gjessene
en mann, a man	mannen	menn	mennene

## 3. NEUTER GENDER NOUNS

- (a) The indefinite article *et* precedes the noun as a separate word. The same letters following the noun and attached to it indicate the definite article. If the noun ends in an unstressed -e, only the termination -t is added. The plural endings are the same as for regular common gender nouns. Examples:

et ansikt, a face	ansiktet, the face	ansikter, faces	ansiktene, the faces
et eple, an apple	eplet, the apple	epler, apples	eplene, the apples

- (b) Monosyllabic neuter nouns and a few of more than one syllable take no ending in the indefinite plural, e.g.:

et hus, a house	huset	hus	husene
et besøk, a visit	besøket	besøk	besøkene
et høve, an opportunity	høvet	høve	høvene

- (c) A few monosyllabic neuter nouns take the ending -er in the indefinite plural, e.g.:

et sted, a place	stedet	steder	stedene
et stoff, a material	stoffet	stoffer	stoffene
et syn, a vision, sight	synet	syner	synene

- (d) Note especially the following two nouns which form the definite plural by adding -a:

et barn, a child	barnet	barn	barna
et ben (or bein) a leg (and foot)	benet	ben	bena

- (e) A few neuter nouns change the vowel and add the endings -r, -rne in the plural, e.g.:

## (Appendix)

et kne, a knee	kneet	knær	knærne
et tre, a tree	treet	trær	trærne
et forkle, an apron	forkleet	forklær	forklærne

Like *forkle* are declined compounds in -kle, e.g.: håndkle, "towel"; lommekle, "handkerchief".

Note especially:

et øye, an eye	øyet	øyne	øynene
----------------	------	------	--------

## 4. COMMON AND NEUTER NOUNS

- (a) Nouns of both genders ending in unstressed -el and -er drop the unstressed -e in front of the indefinite and definite plural. A double consonant preceding the unstressed -e is then reduced to one. In the definite form singular of neuter nouns in -el and -er, the dropping of the -e is optional. Examples:

en vinter, a winter	vinteren	vintrer	vintrene
et eksempel, an example	eksemp(e)let	eksempler	eksempelene
en sykkel, a bicycle	sykkelen	sykler	syklene

For important exceptions to this rule, see §2, d.

- (b) A final -m after a short vowel is always doubled in front of -en, -et, -er, -ene, e.g.:

en dam, a pond	dammen	dammer	dammene
et lam, a lamb	lammet	lam	lammene

- (c) With some nouns, a specific meaning is attached to common gender and neuter respectively, e.g.:

en kart, an unripe fruit	et kart, a map
en ting, a thing	et ting, an assembly
en følge, a consequence	et følge, a procession; a group
en fyr, a chap; a fellow	et fyr, a lighthouse

## 5. FEMININE GENDER NOUNS

Although all feminine gender nouns can be inflected like common gender nouns, most *riksmål* speakers tend to use the following words as feminines:

en geit, a goat	en øy, an island
en hei, a moor	en brakke, a barrack
en ku, a cow	en bu, a store house; small cabin
en vidde, a mountain plateau	en hytte, a small cottage; chalet
en jente, a girl	

Among most *riksmål* speakers the feminine gender is indicated only by the ending -a in the definite singular, instead of the usual common gender definite article -en.

en øy, an island	øya, the island	øyen, islands	øyene, the islands
en gate, a street	gata, the street	gater, streets	gatene, the streets

Instead of the indefinite article *en*, a specific feminine indefinite article, *ei*, is sometimes used with feminine nouns: *ei øy*, an island.

SOME EXCEPTIONAL CASES:

- (a) A few nouns occur only in the plural:

foreldre	foreldrene, parents
søsken	søsknene, brother(s) and sister(s)
klær	klærne, clothes

- (b) Genitive of proper nouns is used as a plural form, meaning the members of the family:

Pettersens	the Pettersens
------------	----------------

- (c) Loan-words frequently have an irregular declension. The most common ones are:

et akvarium akvariet akvarier akvariene aquarium  
 Declined like akvarium are: et evangelium, "gospel"; et gymnasium, "grammar school"; et jubileum, "jubilee"; et kriterium, "criterion"; et museum, "museum"; et mysterium, "mystery"; et privilegium, "privilege"; et sentrum, "centre"; et studium, "course of study".

Note however:

en (or et) datum	(flere) data	fact
et faktum	(flere) fakta	fact
et kvantum	(store) kvanta	quantity

Note especially:

et kolli	kolliet	kolli	kolliene	package
et leksikon	leksikonet	leksika	leksikaene	encyclopedia

Irregular are also some loan-words in -s:

en binders	bindersen	binders	bindersene	paper clip
------------	-----------	---------	------------	------------

Declined like binders are: en (or et) drops, "boiled sweet"; en kjeks, "biscuit"; et tricks (also et trikk), "trick"; en østers, "oyster".

## 6. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

Singular		Plural	
C.	N.	All genders	
min	mitt	mine	my, mine
din	ditt	dine	your, yours
sin	sitt	sine	his, her, hers, its, their, theirs
vår	vårt	våre	our, ours

The singular feminine forms *mi, di, si*, are only used in colloquial Norwegian. You need not bother about these forms, but should be prepared to come across them. Use the Common Gender forms *min, din, sin*.

The possessive adjectives vary according to the gender and number of the noun to which they are attached, e.g. *min bok*, "my book"; *mitt hus*, "my house"; *mine bøker*, "my books".

The forms for the third person singular and plural, and for the second person plural, are, strictly speaking, genitive forms of the personal pronoun. These forms end in -s and are invariable:

Singular		Plural	
hans	his	deres	your
hennes	her	Deres	your (polite address)
dens	its	deres	their
dets			

*Hans bok*, "his book"; *hans hus*, "his house"; *hans bøker*, "his books".

7. The form *Deres*, written with a capital initial letter, is the polite form for "your" when one person only is being addressed, e.g.:

*Hvor er Deres bøker?* Where are your books?

When speaking to more than one person in polite address, the same form is used, but it is then written with a small initial letter, although some people prefer to use a capital here too, e.g.:

*Hvor er deres bøker?* Where are your books?

When speaking about more than one person, *deres* means "their", e.g.:

*Hvor er deres bøker?* Where are their books?

In speech these three examples will sound the same, and only the context will give the clue to the exact meaning.

Speaking to personal friends to whom you say *du*, you use *din, ditt, dine* for "your":

*Hvor har du lagt dine bøker (bøkene dine)?* Where have you put your books?

Speaking to several persons to whom you say *du*, you use *deres*:

*Hvor har dere lagt deres bøker (bøkene deres)?* Where have you put your books?

8. In colloquial Norwegian, the tendency is towards placing the possessive adjective *after* the noun. The noun then always takes the definite article:

stolen min, my chair	huset ditt, your house
bøkene våre, our books	hatten hans, his hat
bordet hennes, her table	bøkene Deres, your books
bøkene deres, your books; their books	

*Min, din, sin, vår*, agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer, whereas the possessives in -s remain invariable. The same rule applies whether these possessives are used as adjectives or as pronouns:

*Det er min stol*, That is my chair.  
*Den stolen er min*, That chair is mine.  
*Det er vårt hus*, That is our house.  
*Huset er vårt*, The house is ours.  
*Det er våre bøker*, Those are our books.  
*Bøkene er våre*, The books are ours.  
*Det er Deres hus*, It is your house.  
*Huset er Deres*, The house is yours.

9. *Sin, (si), sitt, sine*, correspond to "his, her, hers, its, their, theirs", and are the so-called possessive reflexives. They never form part of the subject of the clause in which they occur, but refer *back* to the subject. In this sense they "reflect" the subject. The possessor of the object possessed is the same person as the subject. Compare the following:

*Harald leser boken sin*, Harold is reading his book (i.e. his own book. The possessor of the book is Harold himself).

*Boken hans ligger på bordet*, His book is lying on the table. (Here the possessive forms part of the subject, so *sin* cannot be used.)

*Bjarne ga Knut boken sin*; *Knut liker boken hans meget godt*, Bjarne gave Knut his (own) book; Knut likes his (i.e. Bjarne's) book very much.

The fact that Norwegian has the special reflexive possessive *sin*, means that one can avoid the ambiguity of English "his, her, their". In the sentence: "The boy visits his father during his vacation", it is by no means clear whether it is the boy's father or somebody else's father that is being visited, or whether the visit takes place during the boy's or the father's vacation. In Norwegian all such ambiguity can be avoided:

*Gutten besøker sin far i sin ferie*, The boy visits his (own) father during his (i.e. the boy's) holidays.

*Gutten besøker sin far i hans ferie*, The boy visits his (own) father during his (i.e. the father's) holidays.

*Gutten besøker hans far i sin ferie*, The boy visits his (i.e. somebody else's) father during his (i.e. the boy's) holidays.

*Gutten besøker hans far i hans ferie*, The boy visits his (i.e. somebody else's) father during his (i.e. that gentleman's) holidays.

*Sin* can, in a few cases, be used without reference to the subject. The reference may be to a logical or implied subject:

*Jeg ba ham skrive navnet sitt* (= *Jeg ba ham om han ville skrive navnet sitt*), I asked him to write his name (I asked that he write his (own) name).

*Sin* also occurs idiomatically in some set phrases, e.g.: *til sine tider*, "off and on; now and then"; *på sine steder*, "here and there"; *å kalle tingen ved sitt rette navn*, "to call a spade a spade (literally, to call the thing by its proper name)".



## 10. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

C.	Singular N.	Plural
den, that	det, that	de, those
denne, this	dette, this	disse, these
den der, that	det der, that	de der, those
denne her, this	dette her, this	disse her, these

The forms *den der*, *denne her*, etc., are colloquial forms used much more in conversation than in written Norwegian.

After the demonstrative adjectives the noun normally takes the definite form:

den byen, that town	denne byen, this town
det huset, that house	dette huset, this house
de bøkene, those books	disse bøkene, these books

The pronouns *den der*, *denne her*, etc., when used as demonstrative adjectives, are split up so that the noun appears in the middle:

den boken der, that book	denne boken her, this book
det huset der, that house	dette huset her, this house
de bøkene der, those books	disse bøkene her, these books

In certain set phrases the noun takes no definite article after the demonstrative adjective:

*Den tid, den sorg*, Don't meet troubles half-way (*literally* that time, that sorrow).

*For den saks skyld*, as far as that goes (*literally* for that matter's sake).

Note that after a negation, *den* can mean "none at all":

*Det er ikke den ting han ikke vet*, There isn't a thing he doesn't know.

*Det er ikke det menneske som ikke har gjort noe han angrer*, There isn't a single human being who hasn't done something he regrets.

## 11. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

Several of the interrogative adjectives and pronouns in Norwegian are indeclinable:

hvem	who, whom
hvis	whose
hva	what, which
hva for	
hvordan	what kind of

Declined are:

C.	N.	Plural	
hvilken	hvilket	hvilke	which
hva for en	hva for et	hva for noen	who, what

*Hvem* is used of people, usually of one person, but more than one may be referred to:

*Hvem er den herren?* Who is that gentleman?

*Hvem spør han etter?* Who(m) is he asking for?

*Hvem er de to damene?* Who are those two ladies?

*Hva* is used of things and abstract ideas, and can be both pronoun and adjective:

*Hva gjør du?* What are you doing?

*Hva tid kommer du?* What time are you coming?

Note that a preposition governing *hvem* and *hva* is usually placed at the end of the sentence as is often done in English:

*Hvem gir du boken til?* Who(m) are you giving the book to?

*Hva bruker du pengene til?* What do you use the money for?

12. *Hvis* is the genitive of *hvem*:

*Hvis sønn er han?* Whose son is he?

*Hvis hus er dette?* Whose house is this?

The above examples of *hvis* as an adjective are today felt as literary, and colloquial Norwegian prefers to express the same idea differently, by means of verbs and prepositions:

(Whose son is he?)

*Hvem er han sønn av?*

(Whose house is this?)

*Hvem eier dette huset?*

One can also use the possessive adjective:

*Hvem sin sønn er han?*

*Hvem sitt hus er dette?*

13. *Hvilken* refers both to persons, things and abstract ideas:

*Hvilken av brødrene liker De best?* Which of the brothers do you like best?

*Hvilken bok vil du ha?* Which book do you want?

*Hvilket hus bor de i?* Which house do they live in?

*Hvilke muligheter har han?* What opportunities has he got?

Although *hvilken* is used quite a lot, there is a strong tendency in colloquial Norwegian to substitute for *hvilken* the interrogative *hva for en*:

*Hva for en bok vil du ha?*

*Hva for et hus bor de i?*

*Hva for noen muligheter har han?*

The interrogative expression is sometimes split up:

*Hva er det for en dag i dag?* What day (of the week) is it today?

14. *Hvilken* is used in exclamations:

*Hvilken stemme!* What a (splendid) voice!

*Hvilket orkester!* What an (excellent) orchestra!

*Hvilke muligheter!* What (marvellous) opportunities!

In colloquial Norwegian, however, such exclamations are usually expressed through *for en*, *for et*, *for noen*:

*For en tosk!* What a fool!

*For et vidunderlig vær!* What marvellous weather!

*For noen deilige epler!* What lovely apples!

15. *Hvordan* as an interrogative adjective is rather limited in use, and is restricted to colloquial Norwegian:

*Hvordan kjole skal du kjøpe?* What kind of dress are you going to buy?

*Hvordan vær tror du det blir?* What sort of weather do you think we are going to have?

In most cases *hva slags*, "what sort of", is used:

*Hva slags hus bor de i?* What kind of house are they living in?

Note that when the interrogative pronoun is the subject of a subordinate clause, the relative pronoun *som* is usually added:

*Vet du hvem som kommer?* Do you know who is coming?

*Jeg vet ikke hva som er i veien*, I don't know what is wrong.

## 16. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES are formed in various ways:

(a) by using an interrogative word at the beginning of the sentence. Unless the interrogative word itself forms or belongs to the subject there is inversion of subject and predicate:

*Hvem ser du?* Who(m) do you see?

*Når kommer du?* When are you coming? *but*

*Hvilket brev kom først?* Which letter arrived first?

(Appendix)

(b) by inversion of subject and predicate:

Ser du huset? Do you see the house?

(c) by applying an interrogative intonation to an ordinary statement. In writing, a question-mark is then added:

Han kommer i dag? He's coming today?

17. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

Practically the only relative pronoun generally used in Norwegian today is the invariable *som*, corresponding to English "who, whom, which, that, as":

Han har en bror som bor i Oslo, He has a brother who lives in Oslo.

Han har en bror som jeg ikke kjenner, He has a brother whom I don't know.

Ibsen, som var norsk, skrev mange skuespill, Ibsen, who was a Norwegian, wrote many plays.

Ibsen var, som De vet, norsk, Ibsen was, as you know, Norwegian.

The relative pronoun *som* may be left out when it is not the subject of the relative clause:

Den filmen vi så i går, var god, The film we saw yesterday was good.

Note the idiomatic use of *den som* in exclamations:

Den som hadde en bil! If only I had a car! (*literally*, He who had a car!)

18. *Der* as a relative pronoun is mainly used to avoid having the word *som* several times close together. Thus, *der* is generally used in front of the expression *som kjent*, "as is known":

Kongen, der som kjent er en ivrig seiler, reiser til Hankø i morgen, The king, who, as is well known, is a keen yachtsman, is leaving for Hankø tomorrow.

19. *Hva* usually refers to a whole sentence, or to parts of a sentence:

Han kjøpte den gamle bilen, hva jeg ikke forstår, He bought the old car, (which is) something I don't understand.

Hun sier hva hun mener, She says what she thinks.

Han er lege, hva faren også var, He is a doctor like his father (*literally*, what his father also was).

After the word *alt*, "all", the relative pronoun *hva* may be left out:

Han ville ha alt (hva) han så, He wanted everything he saw.

Jeg skal gjøre alt jeg kan, I'll do everything I can.

20. "Whose" may be rendered by *hvis*, but this has a literary flavour, and in colloquial Norwegian other alternatives are preferred, e.g.:

Jeg traff en mann hvis navn jeg har glemt } I met a man whose name I  
Jeg traff en mann som jeg har glemt navnet på } have forgotten.

*Hvem*, although literary, is sometimes used after a preposition:

Det er mange for hvem dette er en viktig sak, There are many for whom this is an important issue.

Han skrev til sin onkel, av hvem han hadde fått et armbandsur, He wrote to his uncle, from whom he had received a wristwatch.

Increased emphasis can be given by adding *enn* or *så enn*:

Hva du (så) enn sier, Whatever you say.

Noe som, "something which", "a fact which", is frequently used to refer back to a whole clause:

Mange bor langt unna arbeidsplassen, noe som medfører store reisegifter, Many (people) live far from their place of work, which (fact) involves heavy travelling expenses.

(Appendix)

21. THE DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES

The main rule concerning the declension of adjectives is given in point 5 of the Introduction. There are, however, exceptions which you will learn by practice, the more important being illustrated in the lessons. A resumé is given below for reference purposes only.

A final *-m* after a short vowel is doubled in front of the ending *-e*:

en tom flaske, an empty bottle	et tomt glass, an empty glass	tomme tønner, empty barrels
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------------------

22. Adjectives in two or more syllables ending in unstressed *-el*, *-en* and *-er* drop the *-e* of these syllables in front of the inflectional ending *-e*:

en enkel sak, a simple matter	et enkelt problem, a simple problem	enkle metoder, simple methods
----------------------------------	--	----------------------------------

In the case of double consonants, one is dropped:

en gammel by, an old town	et gammelt sagn, an old legend	gamle malerier old paintings
------------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------

23. Adjectives ending in a double consonant drop one in front of neuter *-t*:

en stygg ulykke, a nasty accident	et stygt uhell, a nasty mishap	stygge farger, ugly colours
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

However, the double consonant is kept in *full*, "full" and *viss*, "certain":

et fullt glass, a full glass	et visst ansvar, a certain responsibility
------------------------------	---

This is to avoid confusion with the adjectives *ful*, "cunning" and *vis*, "wise":

et fullt uttrykk, a cunning expression	et vist svar, a wise answer
--	-----------------------------

24. Adjectives ending in a stressed vowel add *-tt* in the neuter and those ending in *-å* add no *-e* in the indefinite plural and in the definite form:

en ny bil, a new car	et nytt hus, a new house	nye omgivelser, new surroundings
den blå bilen, the blue car	et blått bånd, a blue ribbon	blå kjoler, blue dresses

Exceptions: The following adjectives ending in a stressed vowel remain invariable both in indefinite and definite singular and plural: *bra*, "good, fine"; *edru*, "sober"; *slu*, "cunning"; *sky*, "shy"; *sta*, "stubborn"; *tro*, "faithful":

et bra svar a good reply	det bra været, the good weather	bra mennesker, good people
-----------------------------	------------------------------------	-------------------------------

25. Adjectives already ending in *-t* following a long stressed vowel add another *-t* in the neuter, and shorten the vowel:

en søt pære, a sweet pear	et søtt eple, a sweet apple	søte appelsiner, sweet oranges
------------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Notice that *lat*, "lazy" and *kåt*, "wanton, playful, flippant" add no extra *-t* in the neuter:

en lat kar, a lazy chap	et lat barn, a lazy child	en kåt tunge, a flippant tongue	et kåt føll, a playful foal
----------------------------	------------------------------	------------------------------------	--------------------------------

26. Adjectives ending in *-t* preceded by a consonant or an unstressed vowel add no ending in the indefinite neuter singular:

en rett linje, a straight line	et rett svar, a correct answer	rette gater, straight streets
en svart flekk, a black spot	et svart fjes, a black face	svarte hatter, black hats
en fillet frakk, a tattered coat	et fillet skjort, a tattered skirt	fillete klær, tattered clothes

## (Appendix)

Past participles ending in -t following a consonant or an unstressed vowel add no ending in the indefinite neuter singular, but those ending in unstressed -et form the plural in -de:

en dannet mann, a cultured man	et dannet menneske, a cultured person	dannede mennesker, cultured people
en samlet familie, a united family	et samlet folk, a united people	samlede verker, collected works
en kjent forfatter, a well-known author	et kjent fenomen, a well-known phenomenon	kjente omgivelser, familiar surroundings

## 27. Past participles in -en take the ending -et in the neuter:

en velskrevet bok, a well-written book	et velskrevet skuespill, a well-written play	velskrevne artikler, well-written articles
---	---	---

Note that the adjectives *egen*, "special", and *megen*, "much", are inflected in this way:

en egen lukt, a peculiar smell	et eget tak, a special knack	egne trekk, special features
megen ros, much praise	med meget alvor, in great earnest	

There is a tendency to use the form in -et also in the common gender:

en sunken båt, or en sunket båt, a sunken boat

On the other hand, some past participles in -en have become pure adjectives, and keep the -n in the neuter:

en kjærkommen anledning, a welcome opportunity	et kjærkomment bidrag, a welcome contribution	kjærkomne gaver, welcome gifts
en voksent kar, a grown-up fellow	et voksent menneske, a grown-up person	voksne folk, grown-up people

## 28. In a number of cases the indefinite neuter has the same form as the indefinite common, e.g.:

## (a) adjectives ending in -ig and -lig:

en heldig gris, a lucky dog (literally pig)	et heldig sammentreff, a fortunate coincidence	heldige mennesker, lucky people
en billig bok, a cheap book	et billig hus, a cheap house	billige bøker, cheap books

## (b) adjectives ending in -dd or in a -d which is pronounced:

en ladd pistol, a loaded pistol	et ladd gevær, a loaded gun	ladde revolvere, loaded revolvers
en fremmed nasjon, a foreign nation	et fremmed flagg, an alien flag	fremmede land, foreign lands

Exception:

en vred mann, an angry man	et vredt svar, an angry answer	vrede utrop, angry shouts
-------------------------------	-----------------------------------	------------------------------

## (c) monosyllabic adjectives in -sk denoting nationality:

en fransk by, a French town	et fransk flagg, a French flag	franske viner, French wines
--------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

a few other monosyllabic adjectives in -sk: *glemsk*, "forgetful"; *skjelmsk*, "coquettish"; *hatsk*, "hateful"; *spotsk*, "mocking"; *hånsk*, "scornful"; *trolsk*, "magic"; *løpsk*, "runaway".

Adjectives in two or more syllables ending in -sk:

et italiensk maleri, an Italian painting	et kritisk øyeblikk, a critical moment
---	---

## (Appendix)

Monosyllabic adjectives in -sk, other than those mentioned above, take the ending -t in the indefinite neuter:

et friskt barn, a healthy child	et ferskt brød a newly baked loaf
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## (d) a few derived adjectives ending in consonant plus -s:

et gjengs uttrykk, a standard expression	et tilfreds folk, a satisfied nation
et dagligdags fenomen, an everyday phenomenon	

## (e) the following adjectives:

en glad laks, a happy-go-lucky fellow (literally, a happy salmon)	et glad ansikt, a happy face	glade ansikter, happy faces
en kry far, a proud father	et kry svar, a proud answer	krye barn, proud children

## 29. Invariable are

## (a) a number of adjectives in -s:

felles, common; mutual	innvortes, internal
alskens, all sorts of	middels, average
avlegs, old-fashioned	nymotens, new-fangled
ens, identical	sams, common
hodekulls, headlong	stakkars, poor
	utenbys, out of town

## (b) adjectives ending in unstressed -e and -a:

en moderne fabrikk, a modern factory	et moderne hus, a modern house	moderne klær, fashionable clothes
en prima kvalitet, a first-class quality	et prima merke, a first-class brand	prima varer, first-class goods

Also all present participles (ending -ende), all comparatives (ending -re) and all adjectives in -ete:

en lovende kunstner, a promising artist	et lovende forsøk, a promising attempt	lovende utsikter, promising prospect
en bedre bok, a better book	et bedre forslag, a better suggestion	bedre muligheter, better possibilities
en stripe kjole, a striped dress	et stripe skjørt, a striped skirt	stripete tøy, striped materials

Indeclinable are also:

endefram likefram liketil feil, wrong; feil nummer, wrong number	} straightforward
---	-------------------

See also §24.

## 30. SPECIAL CASES

## (a) Notice the following cases where the noun precedes the adjective:

dagen lang, the whole day long
folk flest, the majority of people
Olav den hellige, Saint Olav
Magnus den gode, Magnus the Good

## (Appendix)

- (b) Normally, the adjective is declined when used predicatively:

Gutten er to år gammel, The boy is two years old.  
 Barnet er to år gammelt, The child is two years old.  
 Barna var ikke mer enn to år gamle, The children were no more than two years old.

Some adjectives are, however, indeclinable when used predicatively, e.g.:  
 bevisst, "conscious"; bekjent med, "familiar with"; viss på, "certain of";  
 glad, "happy; pleased"; glad i, "fond of":

Alle var viss på resultatet, All were certain of the result.  
 Nordmenn er glad i blomster, Norwegians are fond of flowers.

- (c) Notice especially the irregular adjective for "little, small":

en liten gutt, a little boy	et lite barn, a little child	små barn, little children
den lille gutten, the little boy	det lille barnet, the little child	de små barna, the little children

The adjective *vesle*, "small", is invariable and is used only in the definite common and neuter singular forms:

den vesle gutten, the small (little) boy	det vesle barnet, the small (little) child
---	---

## 31. USES OF THE DEFINITE FORM OF ADJECTIVES

The definite form of the adjective is used:

- (a) after the definite article of the adjective (see Ten Points to Note, §5):

den siste viking, the last Viking	det norske storting, the Norwegian national assembly	de norske fjell, the Norwegian mountains
--------------------------------------	--	--

- (b) after demonstrative adjectives:
- denne morsomme filmen*
- , "this amusing film".

- (c) after personal pronouns:
- du gamle mor*
- , "old mother of mine".

- (d) after possessive adjectives:
- min kjære venn*
- , "my dear friend". Note especially:
- Din heldige gris!*
- "You lucky dog!" (
- literally*
- , pig);
- Din store kjeltring!*
- "You great scoundrel!" (often used humorously).

- (e) after genitives:
- Ibsens berømte skuespill "Peer Gynt"*
- , "Ibsen's famous play
- Peer Gynt*
- ";
- dagens store begivenhet*
- , "the great event of the day".

Exceptions: After genitives indicating measure of time and place, the indefinite form of the adjective is used: *to dagers ivrig arbeid*, "two days' intensive work"; *en mils slitsom vandring*, "10 kilometres of strenuous walking".

Note that after possessive adjectives and genitives the indefinite forms of the adjective *egen* are used when it means *own*: *min egen skyld*, "my own fault"; *barnets egen far*, "the child's own father". (See also §27. Compare *hans eget vesen*, "his own personality", and *hans egne vesen*, "his stubborn personality".)

- (f) in cases where the adjective is firmly attached to a following proper name
- Gamle Norge*
- , "Old Norway";
- Lille Eyolf*
- , "Little Eyolf";
- Harald Hårfagre*
- , "Harold Fairhair".

Note also a number of compounds often used almost as proper names:

veslegutt, junior	bestefar, grandfather
lillebror, little brother	bestemor, grandmother
lillesøster, little sister	Gamle-Erik, the devil
Gamlebyen, the old section of Oslo	gamlelandet, the old country

## (Appendix)

- (g) in exclamations and addresses:

<i>kjære venn</i> , dear friend	<i>heldige fyr!</i> lucky chap!
<i>gode Gud!</i> good God!	<i>elskede</i> , darling; beloved
<i>milde himmel!</i> good heavens!	
( <i>literally</i> , mild heaven)	

- (h) in a number of set phrases:

<i>hele dagen</i> , the whole day	<i>halve natten</i> , half the night
<i>siste uke</i> , last week	<i> neste stasjon</i> , next station
<i>i siste liten</i> , in the nick of time	<i>i minste laget</i> , rather small
<i>i rette tid</i> , at the right moment	<i>i første omgang</i> , to begin with
<i>for første gang</i> , for the first time	<i>for siste gang</i> , for the last time
<i>midt på lyse dagen</i> , in broad daylight	
<i>midt på svarte natten</i> , in the middle of the night	
<i>midt på travle dagen</i> , in the middle of the busy day	

In a few expressions the indefinite form of the adjective is used with the definite article of the noun:

*Vi ble ikke lang stunden*, We didn't stay long.  
*salig mannen min*, my late husband

## 32. ADJECTIVES AS NOUNS

In Norwegian, adjectives and participles can easily function as nouns:

<i>den unge</i> , the young (one)	<i>de unge</i> , the young (ones)
<i>den blinde</i> , the blind (one)	<i>de blinde</i> , the blind
<i>den syke</i> , the sick (one)	<i>de syke</i> , the sick
<i>den fremmede</i> , the stranger	<i>de sorgende</i> , the mourners
<i>den reisende</i> , the traveller	<i>å ta igjen det forsømte</i> , to catch up
<i>den drepte</i> , the (one who had been) killed	<i>with what one has neglected</i>

## 33. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The regular endings of the Comparative and Superlative are *-ere* and *-est*, added to the common gender form of the Positive, e.g.:

<i>glad</i> , happy	<i>gladere</i> , happier	<i>gladest</i> , happiest
<i>høy</i> , high	<i>høyere</i> , higher	<i>høyest</i> , highest

Adjectives ending in unstressed *-e* take the endings *-re*, *-st*:

<i>stille</i> , still, quiet	<i>stillerre</i> , quieter	<i>stillest</i> , quietest
------------------------------	----------------------------	----------------------------

34. Those ending in unstressed
- el*
- ,
- en*
- ,
- er*
- drop the
- e-*
- of this syllable and where these endings are immediately preceded by a double consonant, one consonant is dropped:

<i>enkel</i> , simple	<i>enklere</i> , simpler	<i>enklest</i> , simplest
<i>doven</i> , lazy	<i>dovnere</i> , lazier	<i>dovnest</i> , laziest
<i>munter</i> , cheerful	<i>muntrere</i> , more cheerful	<i>muntest</i> , most cheerful
<i>bitter</i> , bitter	<i>bitrere</i> , more bitter	<i>bitrest</i> , most bitter

35. Adjectives in
- ig*
- ,
- lig*
- and
- som*
- take the ending
- st*
- in the Superlative:

<i>deilig</i> , beautiful	<i>deiligst</i> , most beautiful
<i>morsom</i> , amusing	<i>morsommest</i> , most amusing

36. A few adjectives change their vowels in Comparative and Superlative:

<i>lang</i> , long	<i>lengre</i> , longer	<i>lengst</i> , longest
<i>stor</i> , big	<i>større</i> , bigger	<i>størst</i> , biggest
<i>tung</i> , heavy	<i>tyngre</i> , heavier	<i>tyngst</i> , heaviest
<i>ung</i> , young	<i>yngre</i> , younger	<i>yngst</i> , youngest

*Tung* can also be regular: *tung, tungere, tungest*.



## (Appendix)

37. Note the two irregular adjectives:

få, few nær, near	færre, fewer nærmere, nearer	færrest, fewest nærmest, nearest
----------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------------

38. Some adjectives change the stem:

gammel, old god, good ille, bad ond, evil vond, bad liten, small mange, many meget, very, much mye, very, much	eldre, older bedre, better  verre, worse  mindre, smaller flere, more mer, more	eldest, oldest best, best  verst, worst  minst, smallest fleest, most mest, most
--	--	---

39. Some adjectives occur only in the Comparative and Superlative:

bakke, the back bortre, further away fremre, the more forward indre, inner midtre, middle nedre, lower ytte, outer øvre, upper	bakkest, at the back bortest, furthest away fremst, foremost innerst, innermost midterst, middlemost nederst, lowest ytterst, uttermost øverst, uppermost
---	--

Some adjectives occur only in the Comparative: høyre, "right"; venstre, "left"; nordre, "northern"; søndre, "southern"; østre, "eastern"; vestre, "western".

Some adjectives occur only in the Superlative: akterst, "aftermost"; eneste, "sole, single"; først, "first"; forrest, "foremost"; mellomst, "middle"; sist, "last"; ypperst, "supreme".

40. Most polysyllabic adjectives in -en, -et, -ete, -sk, -isk, -es and -s, as well as present and past participles, form their Comparatives and Superlatives by means of mer, mest:

bakket(e), hilly hysterisk, hysterical gammeldags, old-fashioned henrivende, charming	mer bakket(e), hillier mer hysterisk, more hysterical mer gammeldags, more old-fashioned mer henrivende, more charming	mest bakket(e), hilliest mest hysterisk, most hysterical mest gammeldags, most old-fashioned mest henrivende, most charming
--	---	--

41. The Comparative is sometimes used absolutely, indicating a high degree:

en bedre middag, an excellent dinner  
en eldre herre, an elderly gentleman  
en høyere offiser, a high-ranking officer

42. THE ADVERB

Adverbs are indeclinable. Some, like straks, "at once"; nå, "now"; her, "here", are primary adverbs. Other adverbs are derived, the most important group being derived from adjectives, and from the present and past participles of verbs. Note that it is the indefinite neuter singular form of the adjective that functions as an adverb, corresponding to the derived form in -ly in English:

Han kommer sikkert, I am sure he will come, *literally* He'll surely come.  
Hun spiller vidunderlig, She plays wonderfully.  
Gutten var strålende glad, The boy was beamingly happy.

## (Appendix)

However, in the following cases it is the indefinite singular *common* gender adjective that is used as an adverb:

Han er fullkommen frisk, He is in completely good health.  
Du må ikke skrike slik, You mustn't scream like that.

Notice especially the pairs of adverbs where the shorter form indicates *direction or motion towards a place*, whereas the longer form indicates *being at a place*:

Han går hjem, He goes home.      Han er hjemme, He is at home.  
Han går ut, He goes out.      Han er ute, He is out.  
Han går inn, He goes in.      Han er inne, He is indoors.

The adverbs *much* and *very* are rendered by:  
svært, meget in front of adjectives in the positive:

Han er svært syk } He is very ill.  
Han er meget syk }

meget, mye in front of adjectives in the comparative:

Han er meget sykere i dag } He is much more ill (= worse) today.  
Han er mye sykere i dag }

43. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

Adverbs derived from adjectives as well as a few others can usually have a comparison:

Han lo høyt, hun lo høyere, men sønnen lo høyest, He laughed loudly, she laughed more loudly, but the son laughed most loudly (the loudest).  
Han undersøkte saken kritisk, mer kritisk enn noen før ham, He went into the matter critically, more critically than anybody before him.  
Jeg ble der lenge, lenger enn jeg pleier, ja, jeg ble lengst av alle sammen, I stayed there long, longer than I normally do, indeed, I stayed longest of them all.

The following adverbs have an irregular comparison:

gjærne, willingly ille, badly godt } well vel } langt, far	heller, more willingly verre, worse  bedre, better lenger, farther	helst, most willingly verst, worst  best, best lengst, farthest
--	--	---

For the position in the sentence of adverbs like ikke, alltid, aldri, see §73.

44. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

Subject	Object	Genitive
jeg, I	meg, me	
du, De, you	deg, Dem, you	Deres, your(s)
han, he	ham, him	hans, his
hun, she	henne, her	hennes, her(s)
den, det, it	den, det, it	dens, dets, its
vi, we	oss, us	
dere, you	dere, you	deres, your(s)
de, they	dem, them	deres, their(s)

For usage of du, De, see note 5 to Introduction I, Nå skal vi snakke norsk. For the genitive forms see §6 and §7.

45. The object form is used for the direct object, the indirect object, and also when governed by a preposition:

Jeg skal hjelpe Dem, I'll help you.  
Kan De si meg veien til Nationaltheatret? Can you tell me the way to the National Theatre?  
Er denne hatten stor nok for Dem? Is this hat big enough for you?

## (Appendix)

The object form is normally used predicatively and in comparisons:

Er det ham? Is it he (*literally* him)?

Jeg er eldre enn ham, I am older than he (is).

The subject form can, however, also be used, especially where a relative clause follows:

Det var han som fortalte meg det, It was he who told me.

Den and det are used only for inanimate objects or animals. Den refers to a noun of common gender and det to a noun of neuter gender:

Bilen er nesten ny. Vi kjøpte den i fjor, The car is almost new. We bought it last year.

Huset er nesten nytt. Vi kjøpte det i fjor, The house is almost new. We bought it last year.

47. Han, hun are occasionally used about animals:

Reven, han vet hva han gjør, The fox, he knows what he is doing.

Høna, hun legger egg, The hen, she lays eggs.

Note that han is sometimes used about wind or sea, hun sometimes about vessels.

48. THE UNSTRESSED NEUTER PRONOUN DET

Det is used:

- (a) as a personal pronoun, referring back to a neuter noun in the singular:

Jeg liker bildet. Det er godt, I like the picture. It is good.

- (b) as an indefinite pronoun corresponding to English *it*:

Hvem er det? Who is it?

Hva er det du sier? What is it you are saying?

Det er dyrt å reise, It is expensive to travel.

Forholdene gjør det vanskelig, Conditions make it difficult.

Note the use of det in impersonal constructions:

Det regner, It is raining.

Det blir mørkt, It is getting dark.

Norwegian uses an impersonal construction in a number of cases where English does not:

Det banker på døren, Somebody is knocking at the door. There is a knock at the door.

Det grusser i meg, I shudder (*literally* it shudders in me).

- (c) as an indefinite pronoun corresponding to English *there*:

Det er ingen tvil, There is no doubt.

Det var engang en konge, There was once a king.

Er det noe jeg kan gjøre for å hjelpe? Is there anything I can do to help?

I kroken står det en sofa, In the corner there is a sofa.

- (d) in a number of cases where there is often no equivalent in English:

Det gikk et helt år, A whole year went by. (There went by a whole year.)

Det kom en gammel mann gående nedover gaten, An old man came walking down the street. (There came an old man . . .)

Note also the idiomatic:

Hvor blir det av Hansen? What has happened to Hansen? (Why doesn't he come? *Literally* Where becomes it of Hansen?)

Note especially det with verbs in the passive voice:

Det ble sendt bud etter politiet, The police were sent for.

Det ble solgt mange malerier, Many paintings were sold.

## (Appendix)

Det sendes et stort antall julekort hvert år, A great number of Christmas cards are sent every year.

Det skal bygges et nytt sykehus, A new hospital is going to be built.

In groups (c) and (d) above it was formerly common to use the adverb *der*: *Der er ingen tvil*. In modern Norwegian, however, *der* has in nearly all cases been replaced by *det*.

49. CLASSIFICATION OF VERBS

Verbs are divided into two classes according to the way in which they form the past tense. Weak verbs form the past tense by adding a dental suffix (see below), and strong verbs without such a suffix.

### WEAK VERBS

By far the greatest number of verbs are weak, and form their past tense by means of one of the following suffixes added to the stem: -et, -te, -de and -dde.

Some verbs can have one or other of two of these endings, either -et or -te, and either -et or -de. E.g.: *å vekke*, "to call"; *vekket* or *vekte*, "called"; *å leve*, "to live"; *levet* or *levde*, "lived". Verbs ending in -et can also have the ending -a in the past tense, but as this is mainly a dialectal feature it can be ignored by the learner. The past participle may be the same as the past tense or it may be formed by adding a suffix to the stem.

Infinitive	Present	Past	Past Participle
å snakke, to speak	snakker	snakket	(har) snakket
å høre, to hear	hører	hørte	(har) hørt
å leve, to live	lever	levde	(har) levd
å tro, to believe	tror	trodde	(har) trodd

A few weak verbs have a change of vowel as well as an added suffix in the past tense and the past participle, e.g.:

å telle, to count	teller	talte	(har) talt
å spørre, to ask	spør	spurte	(har) spurt
å gjøre, to do	gjør	gjorde	(har) gjort

In a few verbs the suffix has been worn away so that the verb now looks like a strong one:

å si (older <i>sige</i> ), to say	sier	sa (older <i>sagde</i> )	(har) sagt
å legge, to place	legger	la (older <i>lagde</i> )	(har) lagt

50. STRONG VERBS

Strong verbs form their past without any ending, but nearly always with a change of the stem vowel. Nearly all strong verbs can be arranged in one or another of six classes, according to the vowel of the past tense form:

Class I	Class II	Class III	Class IV	Class V	Class VI
short a	long a	å	e	o	ø
Infinitive	Present	Past	Past Participle		
Class I					
å synge, to sing	synger	sang	(har) sunget		
å sitte, to sit	sitter	satt	(har) sittet		
Class II					
å be, to ask	ber	ba(d)	(har) bedt		
å gi, to give	gir	ga(v)	(har) gitt		
Class III					
å ligge, to lie	ligger	lå	(har) ligget		
å se, to see	ser	så	(har) sett		

## (Appendix)

Infinitive	Present	Past	Past Participle
Class IV			
å bli, to become	blir	ble	(har) blitt
å skrive, to write	skriver	skrev	(har) skrevet
Class V			
å stå, to stand	står	sto(d)	(har) stått
Class VI			
å klyve, to climb	klyver	kløv	(har) kløvet

The endings for the past tense and past participle of all verbs in the course are given in the Norwegian/English section of the Alphabetical Vocabulary.

## 51. AUXILIARY VERBS

Unlike English, auxiliary verbs all have an infinitive in Norwegian. These verbs usually form their present and past tenses in an irregular way. They may be subdivided into tense-forming and mood-forming verbs, though with some overlapping.

## Tense-Forming Auxiliaries

å ha, to have	har	hadde	(har) hatt
---------------	-----	-------	------------

Å ha is used to form the perfect and pluperfect tenses:

Jeg har fortalt ham at jeg ikke har lest boken, I have told him that I have not read the book.

Jeg fortalte ham at jeg ikke hadde lest boken, I told him that I had not read the book.

å være, to be	er	var	(har) vært
---------------	----	-----	------------

Å være used to be the auxiliary for verbs indicating change and movement, but å være has now been ousted by å ha practically everywhere. In a few cases it is, however, still possible to use one or the other, e.g.:

Han er kommet or han har kommet, He has come.

Han er flyttet or han har flyttet, He has moved.

Det er skjedd en ulykke or det har skjedd en ulykke, An accident has happened.

Det er blitt sent or det har blitt sent, It has got late.

å bli, to become	blir	ble	(har) blitt
------------------	------	-----	-------------

Å bli is used to form the passive voice:

Sjåføren ble drept på stedet, The driver was killed on the spot.

## 52. MOOD-FORMING AUXILIARIES

(a) å skulle	skal, shall	skulle, should	(har) skullet
--------------	-------------	----------------	---------------

For the use of å skulle in forming the future tense, see §53.

As a modal auxiliary, å skulle can imply promise, supposition, order, necessity, etc.:

Jeg skal bli med deg, I shall come with you.

Han skal være rik, He is supposed to be rich.

Nå skal du være snill gutt, Now please be a good boy.

Skal jeg være nødt til å komme? Shall I have to come?

(b) å ville	vil, will	ville, would	(har) villet
-------------	-----------	--------------	--------------

For the use of å ville in forming the future tense, see §53.

As a modal auxiliary, å ville can imply will, desire, wish, tendency, assumption or order:

Jeg ville gjerne hjelpe deg, I should like to help you.

Det ville gjerne bli sent før han la seg, It usually got late before he went to bed.

De vil sikkert ha hørt om ulykken, You have, no doubt, heard about the accident.

Vil du forte deg, Please hurry up.

## (Appendix)

(c) å få, to manage	får	fikk	(har) fått
---------------------	-----	------	------------

Å få is used to express a finished action:

Fangene får rømt av og til. The prisoners manage to escape now and then.  
Under oppholdet i Norge fikk han lært seg norsk, During his stay in Norway he managed to learn Norwegian.

As a modal auxiliary, å få can imply request, permission, necessity or fate:

Du får vente her, Wait here.

Får jeg gå på kino i morgen? May I go to the pictures tomorrow?

Han får finne seg i å vente, He must put up with waiting.

Det var godt han fikk gå, It was a good thing he was allowed to go.

(d) å kunne	kan, can	kunne, could	(har) kunnet
-------------	----------	--------------	--------------

Å kunne can imply possibility, permission, threat, admission or propriety:

Det kan gå bra, It may turn out all right.

Du kan ta min paraply, You may take my umbrella.

Du kan bare prøve å ta min sykkel, Just you try taking my bicycle.

Du kan ha rett i det, You may be right there.

(e) å måtte	må, must	måtte, must	(har) måttet
-------------	----------	-------------	--------------

Å måtte can imply necessity, encouragement, admonition, assumption or permission.

Jeg må få reparert bilen, I must have the car repaired.

De må bare forsyne Dem, Please help yourself.

Du må være forsiktig, You must be careful.

Det må være noe galt med bilen, There must be something wrong with the car.

Må jeg bry Dem? May I trouble you?

(f) å burde	bør, ought to	burde, ought to	(har) burdet
-------------	---------------	-----------------	--------------

Å burde implies advisability:

Du bør ta på deg varme klær, You ought to put on some warm clothes.

(g) å tør, to dare	tør	torde	(har) tort
--------------------	-----	-------	------------

Å tør implies possibility or courage:

Han tør komme på andre tanker, He may change his mind (literally come on (to) other thoughts).

Ingen torde si ham imot, Nobody dared speak against him.

Note that after the modal auxiliaries the principal verb is *always* in the infinitive. (See examples above.)

## 53. FUTURE TENSE

The future tense is formed by means of the present tense of the auxiliary verbs *skulle* and *ville* plus the infinitive of the main verb. *Skal* and *vil* are often used interchangeably in all persons, although there is a preference for using *skal* in the first person and *vil* in the second and third persons:

Vi skal reise i morgen, We shall leave tomorrow.

Vi skal se hva vi kan gjøre, We shall see what we can do.

Du vil finne alt som det var, You will find everything as it was.

Det vil snart vise seg om han har rett, We shall soon know if he is right (literally it will soon show itself if . . .).

Dere vil ikke bli til i morgen da? You can't be persuaded to stay until tomorrow then?

Note that the infinitive is frequently left out in cases where it is a verb of motion,

provided the direction is clearly indicated by an adverb or a preposition:

Hvor skal dere hen i sommer? Where are you going this summer?  
Vi skal til London, We are going to London.

Note especially that "I am going to" plus infinitive corresponds to the Norwegian *jeg skal* plus infinitive:

Jeg skal skrive til ham i morgen, I am going to write to him tomorrow.  
De skal selge bilen, They are going to sell the car.

The future is also expressed in Norwegian by the present tense, and by the expression *kommer til å* plus infinitive:

Vi reiser i morgen } We shall be leaving tomorrow.  
Vi kommer til å reise i morgen }

#### 54. FUTURE PERFECT

The future perfect is formed by *skal* or *vil* plus *ha* plus the past participle of the main verb, and indicates a future action as terminated:

Vi skal ha pusset opp huset innen 1. mai, We shall have decorated the house before May 1st.

More often, however, the future perfect is expressed by the present tense of *å få*, "to get", plus the past participle of the main verb:

Jeg skal betale regningen når jeg får solgt bilen, I'll pay the bill when I (shall) have sold the car.

#### 55. CONDITIONAL

The conditional indicates a future action as seen from a point of time in the past. It is formed by *skulle*, *ville* plus the infinitive of the main verb, and is first and foremost used in conditional statements, being mostly rendered in English by the use of "should" or "would".

Han sa han skulle komme hvis han fikk tid, He said he would come if he got time.

Det ville være synd om han ikke kom, It would be a pity if he didn't come.

Like før vi skulle gå, ringte telefonen, Just before we were leaving, the telephone rang.

As with the future tense, a verb of motion may be left out:

Han sa at han skulle hjem, He said he was going home (he would go home).

#### 56. PERFECT CONDITIONAL

The perfect conditional expresses an action as terminated in the future, seen from a point of time in the past. It is formed by *skulle*, *ville* plus *være*, *ha* plus the past participle of the main verb, the literal meaning in English being "should have" or "would have".

Han stilte seg opp i køen, enda han trodde alle billettene ville være solgt før det ble hans tur, He joined the queue although he believed all the tickets would have been sold by the time it was his turn.

Vi trodde været skulle ha bedret seg til dagen etter, We thought the weather should have improved by the following day.

Note that the past tense of *å få* plus the past participle of the main verb is frequently used to express the perfect conditional:

Han sa han skulle betale regningen når han fikk solgt bilen, He said he would pay the bill when he (would have) sold the car.

The student will notice that English is not always so precise in its use of tenses. In this last example, for instance, the perfect conditional would be replaced by the simple past tense.

#### 57. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

*Seg* ("himself, herself, itself, themselves") is the indeclinable reflexive pronoun, used in the third person, singular and plural, and referring back to the grammatical subject of the sentence, e.g.:

Han morer seg, He amuses himself.

De morer seg, They amuse themselves.

Sometimes the reference is not to the grammatical, but to the logical subject of the sentence:

Læreren lot barna more seg, The teacher let the children amuse themselves.

For the first and second persons, Norwegian has no special reflexive pronouns corresponding to English "myself", "yourself", "ourselves", "yourselves", but uses instead the personal pronoun in the objective form:

Jeg morer meg, I amuse myself.

Du morer deg, You amuse yourself (familiar address).

De morer Dem, You amuse yourself (polite address).

Vi morer oss, We amuse ourselves.

Dere morer dere, You amuse yourselves.

The reflexive pronoun can be governed by a preposition:

De hadde ingen penger på seg, They had no money on them.

Han var fra seg av raseri, He was mad (literally from himself) with anger.

To emphasize that the action is carried out by the subject, the demonstrative pronoun *selv*, "self", can be added:

Han barberer seg selv, He shaves himself.

Barn morer seg lett selv, Children easily amuse themselves (on their own).

Note especially:

Vil De pakke hver ting for seg, Will you wrap each thing separately.

Vi gikk hver for oss, We each went on our own.

#### 58. REFLEXIVE VERBS

A large number of verbs in Norwegian are constructed with the reflexive pronoun where English usually has a simple verb, e.g.:

å gifte seg, to marry

å barbere seg, to shave (oneself)

å vaske seg, to wash (oneself)

å like seg, to feel at home, to enjoy oneself, to have a good time

å sette seg, to sit (oneself) down

å reise seg, to get up

Note the occurrence of two successive pronouns *dere* in the second person plural when there is inversion:

Likte dere dere i Bergen? Did you have a good time (enjoy yourselves) in Bergen?

Compare:

Dere likte dere i Bergen, ikke sant? You had a good time (enjoyed yourselves) in Bergen, didn't you?

#### 59. RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS

Norwegian has two reciprocal pronouns, *hinannen* and *hverandre*, "each other, one another". The genitive forms are *hinannens* and *hverandres*.

In modern Norwegian *hverandre* is nearly always used, although you will frequently come across *hinannen* in older texts.

Vi hjalp hverandre, We helped one another (each other).

De delte hverandres sorger og gleder, They shared one another's (each other's) sorrows and joys.

Note that *hinannen* and *hverandre* are sometimes used without any reciprocal



meaning:

De sto bak hverandre, They stood behind one another (each other).  
Bøkene lå om hverandre, The books lay higgledy-piggledy.

#### 60. VERBS IN -S

A large number of verbs in Norwegian end in -s. Historically, this -s is the reflexive pronoun *seg* that has become permanently attached to the verb, but in modern Norwegian two more functions have been added to the reflexive one, namely a reciprocal and a passive function.

Verbs in -s are conjugated by adding the ending -s to the ordinary forms of the verb. The main exceptions to this rule are that the present tense -r is always dropped, and that weak verbs in -et drop the -t in the past tense and in the past participle. S-verbs from weak verbs in -et will therefore be reduced to one form:

å undre, undrer, undret, (har) undret, to wonder, becomes  
å undres, undres, undres, (har) undres.

To avoid ambiguity in such cases between the present and past tenses, it is common practice to use the s-verb in the present tense and the reflexive form in the past tense: *han undres*, "he wonders", but: *han undret seg*, "he wondered". Apart from weak verbs whose past tense and past participle end in -et, there is no ambiguity, since the present and past tenses have separate forms:

de møtes, they meet      de møttes, they met  
det gis, there is      det gas, there was

Many s-verbs are not fully conjugated. In the past participle especially an added -s can make the consonant cluster too clumsy. Instead of (har) *fortalts*, "(has) been told", one prefers, (har) *blitt fortalt*. Sometimes an -e- is inserted: (har) *kjent*, "(has) known", but: (har) *kjentes*, "(has) been felt".

#### 61. REFLEXIVE S-VERBS

The original reflexive meaning is preserved in a few s-verbs:

å samles, to gather      å undres, to wonder  
å skilles, to part      å gledes, to be happy

Vi skal samles klokken 10 om formiddagen, We shall meet at 10 a.m.  
De skiltes som gode venner, They parted good friends.  
Jeg undres om han kommer, I wonder if he'll come.

#### 62. RECIPROCAL S-VERBS

The mutual relationship indicated by the reciprocal s-verbs is an extension of the original reflexive meaning:

å ses, to see one another      å møtes, to meet one another  
å treffes, to meet one another

Vi ses på søndag, See you on Sunday (*literally* we see one another on Sunday).  
Vi møtes hver tirsdag, We meet every Tuesday.  
Vi treffes ofte hos kolonialhandleren, We often meet at the grocers.

#### 63. PASSIVE S-VERBS

Modern Norwegian tends to make only restricted use of passive s-verbs, although until quite recently they were considered the normal way of expressing the passive. They are, however, in general use in the infinitive after modal auxiliary verbs:

Dette kan gjøres på flere måter, This can be done in several ways.  
Det burde rettes på, It ought to be put right.

The passive present tense in -s is in common use in statements of a general nature:

Boksen åpnes like før innholdet skal brukes, The tin should be opened just before the contents are to be used.

Kjøpte grammofonplater byttes ikke, Records that have been bought will not be exchanged.  
Torsk fiskes i store mengder ved Lofoten, Cod is caught in great quantities in the Lofotens.

Only a few passive s-verbs are used in the past tense:

Det spurtes snart hva som hadde hendt, It was soon known what had happened.  
Det saes at han var syk, It was rumoured that he was ill.  
Det fantes ikke mat i huset, There was (found) no food in the house. (The passive å finnes, "to be found", is most often rendered "to be" in English.)

In the majority of cases, the passive voice in the past tense is rendered by means of the auxiliary verb å bli, "to be, to become":

Han ble sendt på sykehuset, He was sent to the hospital.  
Huset ble solgt nesten med en gang, The house was sold almost at once.

This construction is used also in the present tense to indicate a specific case, and is common also in the perfect and pluperfect tenses:

Det blir nå fisket mye torsk hver dag ved Lofoten, Much cod is now being caught daily in the Lofotens.  
Utstillingen blir åpnet av kongen, The exhibition will be opened by the king.  
Mange malerier har alt blitt solgt, Many paintings have already been sold.  
Utgiftene hadde blitt fordoblet, The expenses had been doubled.

#### 64. Active S-Verbs

A few verbs in -s have an active sense. These are also known as *deponent* verbs (passive in form, but active in meaning): e.g.

å ferdes, to move about      å lenges, to long  
å trives, to feel at home      å synes, to be of the opinion  
å minnes, to remember

Norske sjøfolk ferdes på alle hav, Norwegian seamen sail on all seas.  
Mange mennesker trives ikke i byer, Many people don't feel at home in towns.  
Jeg kan ikke minnes å ha truffet hans kone, I can't remember having met his wife.

Note the following impersonal active s-verbs:

å kjennes } to feel      å dages, to dawn  
å føles }      å våres, to become spring  
å lykkes, to succeed

Det kjennes deilig å være hjemme igjen, It feels wonderful to be home again.

#### 65. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

The present participle ends in -ende, and corresponds to the English present participle in -ing. In Norwegian, however, the present participle has a very much more restricted use. It occurs generally only after the verbs *komme*, "to come", *bli*, "to become", and *ha*, "to have":

Gutten kom løpende, The boy came running.  
Han ble sittende, He remained sitting.  
Jeg har alltid noen frimerker liggende, I always keep a few stamps.

Note especially:

Vi holdt det gående, We kept things going.

As in English, the present participle may be used as an adjective:

et gjennomtrengende hvin, a piercing shriek  
en spennende roman, a thrilling novel

## (Appendix)

It is also used as an adverb:

**Hun ble blussende rød,** She blushed violently, *literally*, She turned burning red.

**Luften var trykkende tung,** The air was oppressively heavy.

Finally, the present participle may be used as a noun:

**Reisende med toget til Bergen, ta plass!** Passengers for Bergen, take your seats!  
**Støtt innsamlingen til de trengende,** Support the collection in aid of the needy.

### 66. COMPOUND VERBS

A number of verbs in Norwegian have prefixes that modify the meaning of the basic verb. Others have adverbs and prepositions attached to them. We must therefore distinguish between the basic verb itself, verbs formed by adding prefixes, and verbs formed by adding an adverb or a preposition. Thus, **å trekke** means "to pull", **å foretrekke**, "to prefer", **å fortrekke**, "to withdraw", and **å trekke for**, "to draw" (e.g. of curtains). Similarly:

<b>å gi,</b> to give	<b>å gjengi,</b> to reproduce	<b>å gi igjen,</b> to give change
<b>å gå,</b> to go	<b>å undergå,</b> to undergo	<b>å gå under,</b> to perish, go under
<b>å holde,</b> to keep	<b>å oppholde,</b> to delay, uphold	<b>å holde opp,</b> to cease, hold up
<b>å vende,</b> to turn	<b>å omvende,</b> to convert	<b>å vende om,</b> to turn round

67. There are a great many verbs with permanent, non-detachable prefixes. Such inseparable prefixes are **be-**, **er-**, **gjen-**, **mis-**, **sam-**, **unn-** and **van-**:

<b>å betale,</b> to pay	<b>å samarbeide,</b> to collaborate
<b>å erfare,</b> to experience	<b>å unnta,</b> to except
<b>å gjenta,</b> to repeat	<b>å vanære,</b> to dishonour
<b>å mistenke,</b> to suspect	

68. In a number of cases an inseparable and a separable form exist side by side, but with different meanings. Of such pairs, the inseparable verb often has a figurative meaning, whereas the separable verb expresses a more concrete idea:

<b>å gjengi en samtale,</b> to render (reproduce) a conversation
<b>å gi igjen penger,</b> to give change
<b>å innta en by,</b> to conquer a town
<b>å ta inn på et hotell,</b> to put up at a hotel

There is a marked tendency to avoid inseparable verbs wherever possible, and to use attached adverbs and prepositions instead. Often the two types are, however, used side by side, without any change in the meaning:

**Norge innfører appelsiner** or **Norge fører inn appelsiner,** Norway imports oranges.

**Produksjonen har avtatt** or **produksjonen har tatt av,** Production has fallen off.

69. Present and past participles functioning as adjectives are inseparable whether they come from separable or inseparable verbs:

**Garasjen hører til huset,** The garage belongs to the house,

but:

**Hus med tilhørende garasje,** House with garage (belonging to it).

### 70. SENTENCE MODIFIERS

A few adverbs present a special problem since they cannot easily be translated directly. These adverbs are **da**, **jo**, **nok**, **visst**, and **vel**, and their function is to modify the whole sentence. They are never stressed. They indicate the speaker's attitude to what he is talking about. It may be an attitude of doubt, hesitation, hope, irritation, admission, and so on. Very subtle effects are sometimes expressed in

## (Appendix)

this way, and you should pay great attention to these modifiers as you come across them, as nothing but keen observation and long practice can really let you into their secrets. Very often the same effect is achieved in English by a change of intonation rather than by the use of any particular word. The following examples will give you some idea of how the sentence modifiers work:

**Han kom sent, men han kom da,** He arrived late, but at least he did arrive.  
("He arrived late, but he *did* arrive".)

**Jeg skjønner ikke hvorfor han ikke kjøper villaen; han har da penger nok,** I don't understand why he doesn't buy the villa; money is no object to him.  
(After all, he has plenty of money.)

**Det var en slitsom reise, men vi kom jo fram til sist,** It was a tiring journey, but we did get there in the end, you know.

**Han kommer nok ikke,** It doesn't look as if he is coming.

**Han kommer vel,** I dare say he'll come.

**Han har visst glemt det,** I dare say he has forgotten it.

### 71. WORD ORDER

Although the word order in Norwegian is often the same as in English, this proves by experience to be one of the last things a foreign learner will get absolutely right.

Both in main sentences and in subordinate clauses, the normal word order is subject—predicate—direct object:

**Jeg leverte boken,** I handed over the book.

**Du vet at jeg leverte boken,** You know that I handed over the book.

An indirect object precedes the direct object:

**Jeg leverte ham boken,** I handed him the book.

**Du vet at jeg leverte ham boken,** You know that I handed him the book.

An adjunct follows the direct object:

**Jeg leverte ham boken i går,** I handed him the book yesterday.

**Du vet at jeg leverte ham boken i går,** You know . . .

The same word order applies when the verb is a compound tense:

**Jeg har levert boken,** I have handed over the book.

**Jeg har levert ham boken,** I have handed him the book.

**Du vet at jeg har levert boken,** You know that I have handed over the book.

**Du vet at jeg hadde levert ham boken.** You know that I had handed him the book.

Inversion of subject and predicate is used to form questions:

**Leverte jeg ham boken?** Did I hand him the book?

**Så du at jeg leverte ham boken?** Did you see that I handed him the book?

In a compound tense the subject of such questions comes after the auxiliary verb

**Har jeg levert ham boken?** Have I handed him the book?

72. If some part of the sentence other than the subject and predicate is placed at the head of the sentence (usually for emphasis), there is inversion:

**Jeg leverte ham boken i går,** I handed him the book yesterday.

But:

**I går leverte jeg ham boken.**

Another alternative is **Boken leverte jeg ham i går** and, less often, **Ham leverte jeg boken i går**.

(Appendix)

Inversion also takes place when a subordinate clause precedes the main sentence:

Som du bad meg, leverte jeg ham boken i går, As you asked me, I handed him the book yesterday.

Note that this also applies to inserted subjects and predicates:

Boken, sa han, leverte han ham i går, The book, he said, he handed him yesterday.

A conjunction does not cause inversion, whether it is inserted or merely implied:

Jeg besøkte ham i går, og jeg leverte ham boken, I saw him yesterday, and I handed him the book.

Jeg leverte ham boken, men jeg fikk ingen penger, I handed him the book, but I received no money.

Du vet jeg leverte ham boken, You know (that) I handed him the book.

In the case of conditional clauses, however, there is inversion *if* the conjunction (e.g. *hvis*) is omitted:

Hvis du ser ham, så lever ham boken, If you see him, then hand him the book.

But: Ser du ham, så lever ham boken.

73. There are special rules governing the position of the negative adverb *ikke*, "not", and a few other adverbs and adverbial expressions of time, e.g.:

<i>alltid</i> , always	<i>av og til</i> , now and then
<i>aldri</i> , never	<i>som regel</i> , as a rule
<i>ofte</i> , often	<i>som oftest</i> , in most cases
<i>sjelden</i> , seldom	

In a main sentence, these adverbs come immediately after the finite verb:

Jeg ser ikke boken, I don't see the book.

Jeg har ikke sett boken, I have not seen the book.

If the direct object is a personal pronoun, these adverbs come after the direct object, unless the tense is a compound one:

Jeg ser ham ikke, I do not see him

But: Jeg har ikke sett ham, I have not seen him.

On the other hand, in a subordinate clause, these adverbs precede the finite verb:

Jeg fortalte deg at jeg ikke så boken, I told you that I did not see the book.

Jeg fortalte deg at jeg ikke hadde sett boken, I told you that I had not seen the book.

74. Note finally that, on the whole, Norwegian tends to avoid insertions, so typical of English. Instead of saying "Olav, having delivered the book, returned to the office", Norwegian prefers *Da Olav hadde levert boken, vendte han tilbake til kontoret*. Where insertions occur, they are usually placed in such a way that they do not separate subject and predicate. Where English has "Olav, despite everything, was quite pleased", Norwegian has *Olav var, tross alt, tilfreds*.

75. For stylistic purposes, the rules above can be overridden. Very common is the placing of a part of the predicate at the beginning of the sentence, whereby inversion of subject and predicate takes place. The part of the sentence thus placed initially usually receives some extra prominence:

Dagen etter kom han, The next day he came.

Boken hadde han glemt, dokumentene husket han, The book he had forgotten; the documents he remembered.

Alltid møtte han opp når kystruten kom, Always he turned up when the coastal steamer arrived.

Note, however, that an adverb placed initially does not always itself carry stress, but transfers extra stress to some other word in the sentence by placing it in a position different from the normal one. Compare *jeg vet ikke*, "I do not know", where *vet* has the main stress, and *ikke vet jeg*, where *jeg* receives strong stress.

(Appendix)

Similarly Ibsen, in a well-known quotation from "Peer Gynt", gives the adjective *slik*, "such", strong stress by placing the adverb *aldri* at the head of the sentence:

*Aldri red jeg slik en fole*, Never did I ride such a foal.

The stress is here further emphasized by the adjective being placed before the indefinite article. You should make a point of noticing such irregular syntax when you come across it in Norwegian texts, but use it very sparingly yourself until you have mastered thoroughly the general rules given above.

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions govern nouns as in English (*på bordet*, "on the table", *i Oslo*, "in Oslo"). They are also used with the infinitive of verbs where in English the verbal noun in "-ing" would be required: *Jeg er glad i å lese*. I am fond of reading. Remember that a given preposition in a given context in English is not necessarily rendered in that context in Norwegian by the same preposition; for instance where English has "by train", the Norwegian equivalent is *med toget*, using *med* which normally means "with".